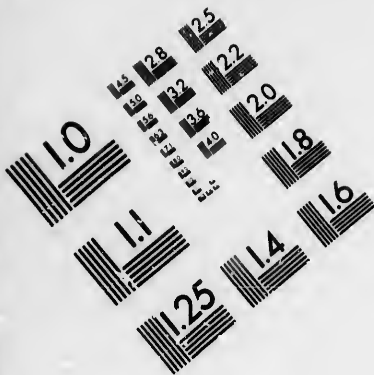


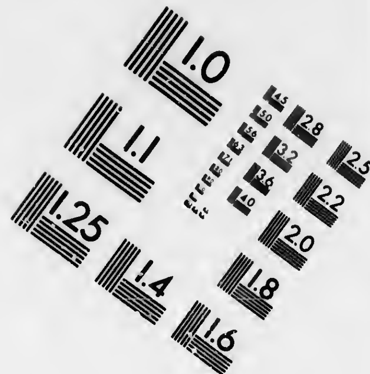
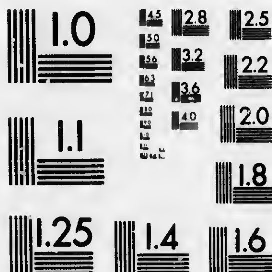
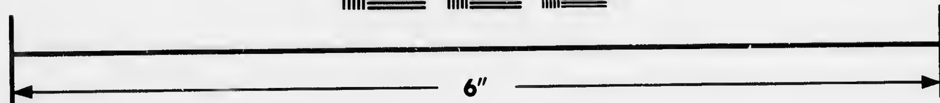
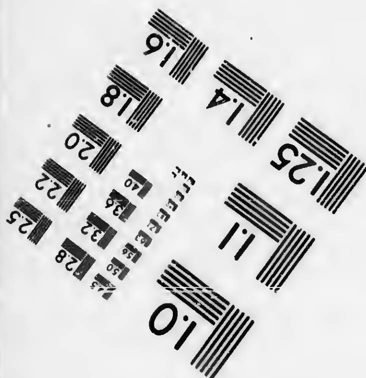
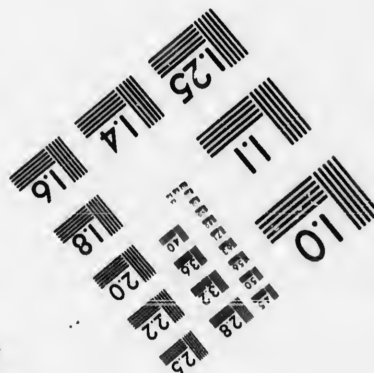


IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)







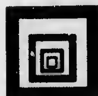


Photographic
Sciences
Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

CIHM/ICMH
Microfiche
Series.

CIHM/ICMH
Collection de
microfiches.



Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques

© 1987

Technical and Bibliographic Notes/Notes techniques et bibliographiques

The Institute has attempted to obtain the best original copy available for filming. Features of this copy which may be bibliographically unique, which may alter any of the images in the reproduction, or which may significantly change the usual method of filming, are checked below.

- [ ] Coloured covers/ Couverture de couleur
- [ ] Covers damaged/ Couverture endommagée
- [ ] Covers restored and/or laminated/ Couverture restaurée et/ou pelliculée
- [ ] Cover title missing/ Le titre de couverture manque
- [ ] Coloured maps/ Cartes géographiques en couleur
- [ ] Coloured ink (i.e. other than blue or black)/ Encre de couleur (i.e. autre que bleue ou noire)
- [ ] Coloured plates and/or illustrations/ Planches et/ou illustrations en couleur
- [ ] Bound with other material/ Relié avec d'autres documents
- [ ] Tight binding may cause shadows or distortion along interior margin/ La reliure serrée peut causer de l'ombre ou de la distorsion le long de la marge intérieure
- [ ] Blank leaves added during restoration may appear within the text. Whenever possible, these have been omitted from filming/ Il se peut que certaines pages blanches ajoutées lors d'une restauration apparaissent dans le texte, mais, lorsque cela était possible, ces pages n'ont pas été filmées.
- [ ] Additional comments:/ Commentaires supplémentaires:

L'Institut a microfilmé le meilleur exemplaire qu'il lui a été possible de se procurer. Les détails de cet exemplaire qui sont peut-être uniques du point de vue bibliographique, qui peuvent modifier une image reproduite, ou qui peuvent exiger une modification dans la méthode normale de filmage sont indiqués ci-dessous.

- [ ] Coloured pages/ Pages de couleur
- [ ] Pages damaged/ Pages endommagées
- [ ] Pages restored and/or laminated/ Pages restaurées et/ou pelliculées
- [x] Pages discoloured, stained or foxed/ Pages décolorées, tachetées ou piquées
- [ ] Pages detached/ Pages détachées
- [x] Showthrough/ Transparence
- [ ] Quality of print varies/ Qualité inégale de l'impression
- [ ] Includes supplementary material/ Comprend du matériel supplémentaire
- [ ] Only edition available/ Seule édition disponible
- [ ] Pages wholly or partially obscured by errata slips, tissues, etc., have been refilmed to ensure the best possible image/ Les pages totalement ou partiellement obscurcies par un feuillet d'errata, une pelure, etc., ont été filmées à nouveau de façon à obtenir la meilleure image possible.

This item is filmed at the reduction ratio checked below/
Ce document est filmé au taux de réduction indiqué ci-dessous.

10X	12X	14X	16X	18X	20X	22X	24X	26X	28X	30X	32X
				✓							

The copy filmed here has been reproduced thanks to the generosity of:

Douglas Library
Queen's University

The images appearing here are the best quality possible considering the condition and legibility of the original copy and in keeping with the filming contract specifications.

Original copies in printed paper covers are filmed beginning with the front cover and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression, or the back cover when appropriate. All other original copies are filmed beginning on the first page with a printed or illustrated impression, and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression.

The last recorded frame on each microfiche shall contain the symbol —► (meaning "CONTINUED"), or the symbol ▼ (meaning "END"), whichever applies.

Maps, plates, charts, etc., may be filmed at different reduction ratios. Those too large to be entirely included in one exposure are filmed beginning in the upper left hand corner, left to right and top to bottom, as many frames as required. The following diagrams illustrate the method:

L'exemplaire filmé fut reproduit grâce à la générosité de:

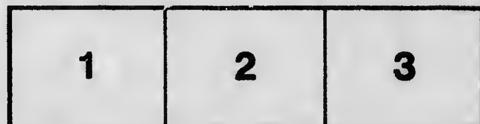
Douglas Library
Queen's University

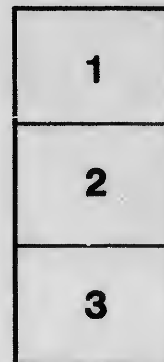
Les images suivantes ont été reproduites avec le plus grand soin, compte tenu de la condition et de la netteté de l'exemplaire filmé, et en conformité avec les conditions du contrat de filmage.

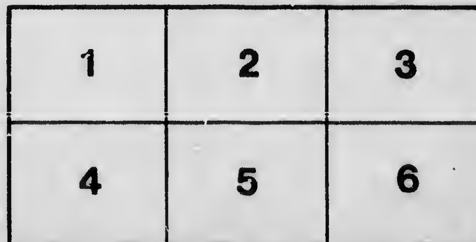
Les exemplaires originaux dont la couverture en papier est imprimée sont filmés en commençant par le premier plat et en terminant soit par la dernière page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration, soit par le second plat, selon le cas. Tous les autres exemplaires originaux sont filmés en commençant par la première page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration et en terminant par la dernière page qui comporte une telle empreinte.

Un des symboles suivants apparaîtra sur la dernière image de chaque microfiche, selon le cas: le symbole —► signifie "A SUIVRE", le symbole ▼ signifie "FIN".

Les cartes, planches, tableaux, etc., peuvent être filmés à des taux de réduction différents. Lorsque le document est trop grand pour être reproduit en un seul cliché, il est filmé à partir de l'angle supérieur gauche, de gauche à droite, et de haut en bas, en prenant le nombre d'images nécessaire. Les diagrammes suivants illustrent la méthode.







A. F. Newlands

Kingston
Comercial
Academy
Ont

R

NOTES

TO THE

FOURTH BOOK

OF

READING LESSONS.

BY

G. A. CHASE, B.A.,

COLLEGIATE INSTITUTE, GALT.

TORONTO:
CANADA PUBLISHING COMPANY
(LIMITED.)
1879.

Entered according to the Act of Parliament of Canada, in the year one thousand eight hundred and seventy-eight, by JAMES CAMPBELL & SON, in the office of the Minister of Agriculture.

INTRODUCTION.

In dealing with literature the teacher must have, as in his other work, one object steadily in view:—his pupils must understand clearly everything the lesson contains; nothing must be taken for granted; it will not do to take their own word for it, or to make them learn accurately the appended notes; the teacher must satisfy himself in his own way that the work is understood. It is very vexatious to find how little is really taken in by the pupil on reading over a lesson in the usual way. Notes will give information, make suggestions, call attention to what might be passed over as common-place; but they can never supply the place of the teacher; it is he alone that can adapt the question to the needs or capacities of the pupil, he alone that can meet the difficulties and arouse the dormant intelligence of each. He will speedily find that he will have to draw largely upon his own knowledge, and rely upon notes only where his own resources fail.

The lessons in literature must not be lectures, must not be examinations; they must be a continued talk, a familiar conversation between teacher and pupil, for this is the only way that thought can be reached. The knowledge thus conveyed, and the mental activity thus aroused, will be far more beneficial than any other kind of teaching can possibly be; it makes intelligent boys and girls.

The teacher will thus see that the very best author to compose "sets of questions on literature" is *himself*. There is not a more wearying, deadening, or destructive work for teacher or student than to set himself to studying literature by a series of questions. This is the reason why no "questions" are appended to the Fourth Reader. On the other hand, when his work is well prepared, the teacher will find nothing in the whole range of his work so delightful, so instructive to himself and to his charge, as literature; he will find, and be surprised to find, that on going over the same ground again, he will rarely ask the same question the same way; new ideas will continually arise, new modes of illustration, new facts. The lesson must not be made *prosy*. It is well always to start with what the pupil knows himself, and gradually add with his own help to his stock of knowledge. Thus every question or objection on the teacher's part must have a different bearing on the subject in view. By way of illustration we may take "Iceland." The objects in view are: to give a clear idea of the climate, the inhabitants, the food, etc. Beginning with the position of the island, its size, etc.,—"Wouldn't a boy like to live in Iceland?" "Yes, sir." "No, sir." "You say, 'Yes, sir,' now why?" "Because there's

plenty of snow and ice to ride down hill and skate on." "The other boy said, 'No, sir'; why would you not like to live there?" "It's so cold." "So cold! you like to ride down hill and skate, don't you?" "Yes, sir." "Then you would like to have ice and snow in warm summer days, I suppose." "But, sir, things can't grow where it is cold." "Well; what of that?" "Why, people can't live where nothing grows." "But, your book says there are people living in Iceland. How do *they* live if nothing grows for them to eat?"

And thus question, objection, laugh and information, will gradually bring out and stamp upon the pupil's mind, the conditions of life in Iceland, the food, the occupations, the climate, the seasons, day and night; the use of cold climates in moderating the heat of the more tropical ones; the swarming seas supplying the lack of vegetation: in short, a thousand things all closely connected with this cold region. The illustration employed may seem silly to some; but before condemning it, let the principle aimed at be as fully tested as it has been by the writer.

The notes appended to the Fourth Reader are intended to meet the requirements of the teachers, generally, and also of their pupils. Everything deemed a real difficulty has been touched upon, but a great deal has been left for the intelligence of the teacher to complete. Few derivations, comparatively, have been given; but all those that add force or beauty to the word, or from which anything can really be learned, have been carefully inserted, and the teacher *must not* burden his pupils with more.

Short biographies of the best known writers have been given,—it being worse than useless to burden a child's memory with an account of the life of every obscure author.

Throughout the "notes" frequent reference has been made to Abbott's "How to Parse," Chambers's "Etymological Dictionary" and Campbell's "Geography"; this has been done because those works are deemed by far the best of their kind within reach of the pupil. In the first mentioned, teachers should carefully study those paragraphs explaining the use of the pronoun "it," the construction of infinitives, of sentences introduced by "so," "that," "as," etc.

Finally, it may be added that it has often been found difficult, or even impossible, to give definitions for certain words and phrases; in these cases illustration rather than definition has been aimed at.

G. A. CHASE.

GALT, October, 1878.

INDEX

TO

NOTES ON THE FOURTH BOOK OF READING LESSONS.

N.B.--The titles of the "Lessons" beginning with "the" or "a" or "an" are to be looked for under the first letter of the following word.

A.	PAGE.
Adam's Morning Hymn	117
Adventure in Brazil	58
Adventure in the Life of Audubon	47
Afar in the Desert	92
All Creatures Called on to Praise God	110
All's For the Best	111
Alma River	96
America to Great Britain	39
American Eagle	50
Askelon	97
Auburn	116
Auk (The Great)	12
Autumn Woods	25
B.	
Backwoodsman	46
Baffled Traveller	71
Battle of Blenheim	34
Battle of the Baltic	80
Battle of Clontarf	68
Battle of the Nile	88
Battle of Thermopylæ	83
Bernardo del Carpio	86
Best Kind of Revenge	62
Better Land	111
Boyhood of Benjamin West	47
Bruce and the Spider	67
Buccaneers	53
Burial of Moses	105
Burning of Moscow	81
C.	
Cedar of Lebanon	98
Chinook Indians	7
Christ's Second Coming	110
Christian Salvation	110
Coal Fields of Nova Scotia	15
Conquest of Peru	58
Conquest of Wales	66
Coral Grove	103
Cortez in Mexico	51
D.	
Day in Bangkok	101
Death of Keeldar	65
Death of Magellan	101
Death of Montcalm	28
Destruction of Sennacherib	100
Destruction of Pompeii	84
Destruction of the Red River Colony	8
Discovery of America	16
Discovery of Australia	102
Discovery of the Cape of Good Hope	95
Downfall of Poland	76
E.	
Earthquake of Caraccas	56
Elegy (Gray's)	112
Enoch Walked with God	104
F.	
Faithful Negro	57
Fallen is thy Throne	109
Falls of Niagara (The)	42
Falls of Niagara (Earl of Carlisle)	36
Falls of the Zambesi	95
Female Crusoe	8
Fight with a Kangaroo	103
Fire in the Woods	25
Fisheries of British Columbia	6
Fishing for Muskalounge	34
Founding of Aix-la-Chapelle	74
Founding of the North American Colonies	9
Four-leaved Shamrock	68
G.	
Gallantry of a Marine	33
Gaucho of the Pampas	60
Geysirs of Iceland	79
Giraffe	94
Good Advice not to be Despised	100
Gorilla	93
Grateful Jew	82
Graves of a Household	116

H. PAGE.

Hairbreadth Adventure in Demerara 57
Hermann, the Deliverer of Germany 73
Hiawatha's Sailing, 9
Historical Sketch of P. E. I. 21
History of the Israelites . . till Revolt, etc. 106
History of the Israelites . . till Captivity 106
History of the Israelites . . till Christ 107
History of the Israelites . . Destruction of Jerusalem 103
History of Vancouver Island 6
Holy Spirit 111
Hope Beyond the Grave 114
Hour of Death 107
Hudson Bay Company 5
Humming-Bird 58

I.

Incarnation 111
Incident at Bruges 70
Incident at Ratisbon 75
Indian Council 35
Indian Summer 35
Inquiry 104
Integrity Rewarded 44
Interior of an Ancient Palace in Nineveh 99

J.

Jack Frost 21
Jacques Cartier at Hochelaga 31
Jerusalem Before the Siege 108
Journeying of the Israelites 104

L.

Labrador and other Teas 27
Lake of the Dismal Swamp 40
Lament of the Peri 97
Lark at the Diggings 102
Lazaretto at Tracadie 26
Left Ashore on Anticosti 26
Leper 98
Lines on the Death of Wolfe 29
London 61
Lord Ullin's Daughter 69
Lost Hunter 7
Lumbering 39

M.

Maelstrom 80
Mahomet 98
Man was Made to Mourn 118
Maple 28
Moose Hunting in Nova Scotia 21
Mountaineer in Newfoundland 14

N.

National Song 60
Natural Bridge 48
New Zealand Chief 103
Norwegian Colonies in Greenland 1

O. PAGE.

Ocean 89
On the Death and Sacrifice of Christ. 110

P.

Palestine 108
Parting with the Esquimaux 2
Passage of the Red Sea 104
Pearl Fisheries of Ceylon 100
Pitcher Plants 21
Prairies (The) 17
Prairies of North America 43
Psalm of Life 109

R.

Rapid 33
Richard the Lion-heart 98
River St. Lawrence 29
Road to the Trenches 83
Rock of Ages 110
Roman's Honor 88

S.

Sable Island 14
Saviour 109
Scene at St. Helena 94
Separation 116
Settlement of the Israelites 105
Shark Adventure in Panama 56
Ship-builders 24
Ship-building in New Brunswick 23
Siege of Delhi 100
Siege of Hensburgh 78
Sir Humphrey Gilbert 13
Sir John Franklin 4
Skater's Song 43
Skater and the Wolves 42
Slavery 91
Slave Hunt in the Sahara 93
Slave's Dream 93
Song of Emigration 44
Song of the Emigrants in Bermuda 52
Song of Miriam 106
Source of the Nile 92
Sponge 98
Squirrels 34
Stage Coach 63
Story of Le Fevre 116
Story of Maldonata 59
Story of Wapwian 27

T.

Taking of Detroit 37
Taking of Edinburgh Castle 67
Taking of Gibraltar 87
Teaching, etc., of Jesus Christ 110
Three Scenes in the Tyrol 77
Thunder-storm among the Alps 116
Times and Seasons 115
Trapping a Tapir 52

U.

United Empire Loyalists 19
Use the Pen 106

V.	PAGE.
Veteran Tar	69
Victoria Bridge	31
View of Lisbon	86
Village Garrison	74
Visit to the Botanic Gardens	54
Voice of Spring	115
Voyage of the Golden Hind	12

W.	PAGE.
Western Hunter	45
West Indian Islands	55
What is Time	115
William Tell, etc.	79
Wolverine	3
Wreck of the Orpheus	102

W
You
to t
exp
Em
scie
T

I
day
cau
(Se

Eri
—
Sn
—
p
I
'
Di
s
n
c
Fi
e
b
n
p
Ca
n
Ex
I
r
Le
Ol
t

NOTES TO THE FOURTH BOOK.

THE NORWEGIAN COLONIES IN GREENLAND.

William Scoresby, a celebrated Arctic explorer and man of science, was born in Yorkshire in 1789, and died in 1857. As captain of a whaler, he made seventeen voyages to the coasts of Greenland and Spitzbergen, and wrote an account of them. In 1822 he explored the east coast of Greenland—then an unknown region. On his return to England he gave up the sea and became a clergyman, but ardently studied physical science. He wrote several valuable works.

The following are some of the other chief Arctic navigators:

Corte Real	1500	Ross	1818
Frobisher	1576	Parry (five voyages)	1818-1825
Davis	1585	Franklin	1823, 1845-6
Hudson	1610	Rae	1847
Baffin	1616	Kane	1853
Cook	1776	Hall	1854
McKenzie	1789	Nares	1875

(See Note on Sir J. Franklin.)

Iceland—309 miles long, 200 broad; 500 miles north of Scotland. The longest day in the southern part is 20 hours; in the north, about a week. The first visitors came from Norway in the 8th century; but the island was not settled till A.D. 874. *(See Geography.)*

Eric Rauda—("au" like "ou" in hound) —that is, Henry the Red.

Snœfellzness (pronounce *snu-fellz-ness*) —("u" as in "ugly")—snow-cape, or promontory; "ness," is the same as "*the Naze*," in Norway and England, and "*nose*."

Disseminated—scattered abroad like seeds—(Latin "*semen*"; plural, "*semina*."—seeds; "*dis*"—apart, abroad, asunder.)

Finished picture—simply means that everything they could wish for was to be found in this "green" land—just as nothing is wanting in a picture that is perfect.

Cattle—In some parts of Greenland the musk-ox is said to exist.

Exodus—a going out—an emigration; the *Exodus* of the Bible tells about the Israelites *going out* of Egypt.

Leif—pronounce, "*life.*"

Olaus Tryggeson (pronounce *o-lah-us tryg-ges-son*)—("y" like the sound next after "w" in sweet).—"Olaus" is the Latin form of the Norwegian "Olaf." This Olaf was the father of St. Olaf, Olaf II. (*see* Longfellow's "Tales of a Wayside Inn"); he introduced Christianity into Norway.

Paganism—from Latin "*pagānus*," a villager, inhabitant of a distant country district. In Italy the cities were the first to embrace Christianity; the distant country districts were so slow in following the example of the cities in this respect, that "paganus" soon came to mean, not only a villager, but also one who worshipped idols. In English the word has the latter signification only. In the same way "heathen,"—dwellers on the heath—gets its present meaning.

Benighted—literally, *covered by the night*; in deep ignorance;—just as when we are in the dark we see nothing, so when ignorant we know nothing.

Gospel—formerly spelled "god-spell," that is, good story or message—not

"God's message," as is sometimes said. (*See* the "good tidings" in Luke ii. 10.)

Centuries—Is the *cent* in this word the same as *cent*, a piece of money?

Osterbygdt—(pronounce *ost-er-bygdt*)—(*see* "Tryggeson," above)—properly, "Œsterbygdt," (*see* "Snœfellzness," above)—eastern colony; "Westerbydgt," western colony:—"bygdt" is the same as the Scotch "*big* (-gin),' a house, or building.

Hamlets—"Ham" means *home*, sometimes *village*: it is the same word as in "Wingham," &c.; "let" means *small.*

Garde (pronounce *gar-deh*).

So that a constant—This clause is adverbial to the preceding, showing a *result* arising from it.

It is generally believed—What does "it" mean here?

Skrœllings—Norwegian, meaning *wretches*. (*See* "Snœfellzness," above.)

Wrapt—Should not this word be spelled "wrapped?" When is "ed" pronounced like "t"? In "wrapped," try to sound "ed" like "d" and observe carefully what change occurs on the "p."

Black Death—*See* History of England, reign of Edward III.

Scourged—Show that this word, which really means *whipped*, is properly used here; as also, *extinguished*.

Especially—modifies "is supposed."

Queen Margaret—born in 1353, died in 1412;—queen of Norway, Sweden and Denmark. She was a very excellent ruler, and greatly beloved, especially by the Danes.

Embarrassed—The root of this word is "bar";—show how the idea of a "bar" is present in it. (See "benighted" above). Compare "barrier."

As to be oblivious—This phrase is equivalent to an adverb, modifying "embarrassed"; or more strictly speaking, in apposition with "so";—showing the extent, or degree, of the embarrassing.

In the opinion—Parse "*in*"; what was the *opinion*?

Conjecture—The object of this verb is "whether they would. . . . . wild Greenlanders"; the object of "attempt" is "to conjecture," &c. (See note on infinitives under "Discovery of America" below).

Whether they would be met with—"with" here, must be taken as a part of the verb,—would-be-met-with. The sentence, if properly composed, would be 'people would meet with them'; or leaving out the "with"—'they would be met.' We are accustomed, however, to such sentences as this one in the extract.

Mixed—Parse this word.

Such as—*such*, qualifies implements; "as" is the subject of the next verb.

Unicorn—that is "one horn." There is no such animal as is figured in the English coat of arms. The rhinoceros is often called a unicorn. In the extract Mr. Scoresby means the "narwhal" or "sea-unicorn,"—a sea-animal with a long horn or tusk sticking out of the fore part of its head.

Domestic implements—knives, axes, awls, &c., &c.

Aborigines—the earliest people in the country,—those who had their *origin* in it, so to speak: not colonists.

Circumstance—in apposition to the sentence "he likewise . . . . . coffin."

PARTING WITH THE ESQUIMAUX.

Dr. Elisha Kent Kane, a celebrated Arctic navigator, was born at Philadelphia in the year 1820. He studied medicine at the University of Virginia, and, on completing his course, became a surgeon in the United States navy. After visiting many countries in Europe, Asia and Africa, he went, in 1850, as surgeon, naturalist, etc., in an expedition sent to the Arctic regions by Henry Grinnell, an American merchant. In 1853 he was commander of the second Grinnell expedition sent to the Arctic seas in search of Sir John Franklin; and though unsuccessful in his object, he reached the farthest point north that had as yet been attained, viz., latitude 82° 30'. On his return he received great honors both at home an abroad. His health failing he went to Havanna, where he died in 1857. He wrote full and interesting accounts of his voyages.

Esquimaux—*ĕs-kee-mo*;—other spellings are "esquimo" and "eskimo." An Indian word, meaning "eaters of raw fish." It is a name given to a race of people living along the east coast of North America and its inlets, bays, etc., as far south as Labrador; they are also found in Alaska and in Asia in the region of Behring Strait.

Etah—an Esquimaux settlement a few miles north of cape Alexander.

Cape Alexander—discovered by Kane, on the west coast of Greenland, lat. 78° 10' north. By the Esquimaux this cape is called "*Utak-soak*"—the great *caldron* or boiler.

Ventricose—Little Accomodah was *corpulent*.

And who not—The full sentence is, "and who is not there"?

Nalegak—chief.

Soak—big, great.

Neighbor—The "u" must not be omitted in this word; it belongs to the root, and is not in the same class as "u" in *labour*, etc. *Neigh* is the same as *nigh*; *bour* means a "dweller," and is the same as *burgh* in "Edinburgh"—the dwelling of Edwin.

Stanchly—(or staunchly), firmly; the verb "stanch" means to stop the flowing of anything, as blood, etc.

Affectation of regret—pretending to be sorry, but not really so.

Patriarch—chief, or head father; generally an old man, having children and grand-children. "Arch" is the same as in *arch*angel, *arch*bishop, etc.

Gipsying—living, or amusing one's self, like gipsies, in the open fields, etc. This word, also spelled "gypsey" and "gipsey," is said to be a corruption of the word "Egyptian," because people supposed that the Gipseys came originally from Egypt; it is now known they came from India.

Icy meadows—the sea covered over with ice.

Red Eric—the name of Kane's small boat.

Berg—mountain (*See* "glacier," below).

Short lived, summer sun—At cape Alexander the sun is above the horizon throughout June and July. Kane found the greatest heat, 53° Fahrenheit, in July; though in some parts of Greenland it has been known to reach 84°.

Pupils will, of course, know where the longest day is, and why. At cape Alexander, will the sun be below the horizon the rest of the year?

Rich in all—"Rich" qualifies "they," three lines below.

Sleep—This and the three following nouns are in apposition with the pronoun "all," a few words before.

Beau-ideal—*bō-ī-dēal*, a French expression, meaning a beauty or excellence that a person imagines to himself to be the greatest. The sun is the *beau-ideal* blessing to the Esquimaux.

I have reason . . presence—Dr. Kane means that the Esquimaux thought him and his followers to be sorcerers or magicians, who would bring some harm on them, such as driving off the fish, or walruses and bears, on which they lived; this was the "superstitious fear."

Under superstitious, etc.—*Under* is in construction with *destroy*.

Oomiak-soak—great boat.

Blended in our interests—Explain.

Albeit—although

Argument—a summary of the leading points or ideas in a poem, etc.; here it is the leading ideas of their morality.

Morality—This word means here "the rules, or principles, which regulate our conduct toward each other."

Angekok—prophet, doctor, etc., like the "medicine-man" of the Indians; a very important personage, whose advice the "nalegak" always asked.

Natural magic—"Magic" is derived from "magi," Persian priests and learned men—the "Wise men of the East" of the New Testament. They were specially skilled in astronomy; on account of their learning, people thought they had power greater than man's; hence the present meaning of "*magic*." Kane's lens, or burning-glass, and ether, and magnet are illustrations of *natural* magic,—strange or startling effects, but quite natural, requiring no trickery of man's to produce, as the ordinary "magic" does.

The brig—Kane's vessel, the "Advance." A brig is a two-masted vessel, with yards and square sails on each mast.

Blazing ether—Ether (ēther) is a fragrant, colorless liquid, evaporating very rapidly, and very inflammable. Dr. Kane ran no risk of burning himself, for the ether was gone before much heat could be produced.

Kolupsut—a cooking utensil.

Magnet—This name is said to be derived from the city of "*Magnesia*" in Asia Minor, where it was discovered. "Load-stone" is the popular name of the magnet.

Lens—*See* Chambers' Dictionary. As ice is a transparent substance, it answers for lenses as well as glass; the lens turns the rays of the sun that fall upon it, from their direct course, and collects them in a point, where the heat is so great that it will set fire to various things. In the preceding sentence, Dr. Kane says he wanted to teach the Esquimaux how to make and use a lens, so he formed one out of ice in their presence.

Peteravick—near cape Alexander.

By the all hail hereafter—This is a quotation from Shakespere's play, "Macbeth" (Act I., scene v., line 55); the meaning is, 'when the present

nalegak dies the Esquimaux will hail (or salute) Hans as their next nalegak.'

All hail—*See* the note on this, under "The Maple."

Hans—(pronounce "honce"), a German word, the same as our "Jack."

Leaders of my team—Sledges in Greenland are drawn by dogs.

Glacier—a vast field of ice, formed among mountains and slowly gliding downwards. When, in cold countries, the glacier is pushed out into the sea, great masses are broken off and floated away. These are the terrible icebergs so dangerous to vessels crossing the Atlantic. They are at least eight times as large below water as they are above; some have been seen over three hundred feet in height and many miles in length; on the coast of Greenland they are often aground where the water is a thousand feet or more, deep. They generally contain deep holes filled with pure water; for, of course, the icebergs are fresh ice, not salt.

Drift-wood—A place where wood is drifted ashore is a very desirable one for a Greenlander, whose country is so bare of trees.

Kayack—the Greenlander's boat, made of skins.

Cape Shackleton—on the west coast of Greenland, about lat. 73° 40'.

Danish settlements—The nearest one would be Upernavik, about one degree south of cape Shackleton; this town is said to be the most northerly abode in the world of civilized man.

Hummocks—rough ridges of broken ice, caused by different fields of ice pushing against each other.

Homeward-bound—This "bound" is not the same word as the past participle of "*bind*;" but it is the same as in the expression "I am bound to run"—that is, "determined," prepared, etc.

SIR JOHN FRANKLIN.

Sir John Franklin was born in Lincolnshire, England, in 1786; he entered the navy in 1800, and was present at the battles of Copenhagen and Trafalgar. In 1819 he was sent to survey the coast of America from Hudson Bay northward, and was gone nearly three years; in 1822 he surveyed a third of the way across to Behring Strait; in 1836 he became governor of Van Dieman's Land. In 1845, when nearly sixty years old, but hale and hearty, he started with the "Erebus" and "Terror" to find a north-west passage around America. The poem tells the story,—all perished. More than twenty expeditions were sent out in search of the missing crews, but gained little or no tidings of them, till in 1858 Sir L. McClintock found on King William Island a "cairn," or large heap of stones, that enclosed a box containing papers, saying that Franklin had died in 1847 on board his vessel; that the crews had abandoned the vessels and were trying to reach some open water so that they might, in their boats, sail to some settlement, or meet some ship.

Several other Arctic navigators since 1858, have met with traces of Franklin. The following are the names of some of the men sent out in search of Franklin:—Moore, Rae, Ross, 1848; Rae, 1850-4; Belcher, 1852-4; Kane, 1853-5; Hall (American), 1854-6; Hayes (American), 1865. Over 200 voyages have been made to find the north-west passage; Capt. McClure accomplished it in 1852.

The Polar clouds uplift, etc.—This refers to the very scanty account given by the papers found in the cairn by McClintock.

The poem shows to us the Polar regions covered by dense clouds, hiding everything from our gaze; for a moment they lift up, and we see the men starting on their march, dragging their boats after them; they drop down one by one as they get exhausted, and die; and when those who keep up reach the open water, their strength is gone, and they too perish. Then the clouds settle down again and all is dark as before.

Braced—their minds firmly made up to meet the fate that awaited them.

Long march, etc.—As if death would not meet them at the ship, but they must march to it.

Blink—a peculiar dazzling glare in the atmosphere over distant ice.

Is dotted—The Esquimaux said that "the men just dropped down as they went along."

Like drunkards—Travelling over the snow during sunlight in the Arctic regions causes delirium.

Wotting—knowing. This word should be "witting," the present participle of the old English verb "witan"—to know; present tense, "wot"; past, "wist." (*See* Acts xxiii., 5). We use the present participle in the form "un-

wittingly," and the infinitive in "to wit"—an adverb. 'If it were not for the pain the sailors felt, they could scarcely tell whether they were alive or not.'

Iron strand—barren, rocky, unfeeling as iron.

His heart, etc.—'Franklin did not live to have the grief of seeing his sailors die; and the sailors, dying from exposure, did not have the additional pain of seeing their captain perishing with them.'

This poem appeared in the London "Punch," October 8, 1859, shortly after the arrival of the news of the discovery of the fate of Franklin and his companions. "Punch" is the most celebrated humorous paper in the world; but it often has its very serious moments.

THE HUDSON BAY COMPANY.

Mr. Ballantyne is the writer of numerous interesting books of travel and adventure, mostly for boys.

Hudson Bay—*See* note on "Founding of the N. A. Colonies."

Prince Rupert—a nephew of Charles I.; he was a famous cavalry commander on the king's side, in the civil war in England in Charles I.'s reign. His opponents called him "Prince Robber." In later life he took an interest in scientific pursuits.

Charter—(Latin, "charta," a paper), a document granted to a company of men by a ruling body, conferring power to perform the things mentioned in it. Note the powers granted to H. B. Company.

From carrying—"Carrying" is to be regarded as a noun here, the object of "from."

James Bay—called after Captain James, an Arctic navigator.

Primeval—belonging to the very remotest times:—Latin, *primus*, first; *œvum*, age.

Three hundred miles — "Miles" is really the object of "of" understood; —hundred, thousand, score, dozen, etc., are nouns, not adjectives; the other numerals are adjectives.

Pacific Ocean—*See* the note on "Southern Ocean," under "The Buccaneers." Magellan, in 1521, bestowed the name "Pacific" on this ocean, as it was calm when he entered it.

Boundaries of the U. S.—Trace these carefully.

St. Lawrence—*See* note under "Founding of N. A. Colonies;" also "The St. Lawrence River."

Esquimaux Bay-north-east of Labrador.

Oregon—There came near being a war once about this country, between England and the United States. The Americans claimed all the country west of the Rocky Mountains up to 54° 40' north latitude; this the English opposed, and for many years both nations occupied it. In 1846, when there was danger of war, a compromise was made, by which the parallel of 49° was made the northern boundary of the United States.

Few of them—This means "none at all," or nearly so; while *a few* means "some," but not many.

Bona fide—bō-na fī-dee;—a Latin expression, meaning "in good faith."

Bastion—*See* Chambers' Dictionary.

Stockade—an enclosure made by driving stakes, sharpened at the top, firmly into the ground, and close together.

Trapper—one who catches wild animals in traps.

Depôt—a French word, meaning a storehouse, etc.

Smattering of Indian—a little knowledge of the Indian language.

Raw lads—We often say "green" lads; a "lad" is older than a boy.

Agape—Some boys will no doubt have noticed that, very often when people are gazing at or listening to anything very earnestly, they unconsciously open their mouth. The prefix "a" of "agape," was once a separate word, "on;" so also in abed, aboard, ashore, etc.

Standard—This is merely the rule or measure to judge by; the *dollar* is our standard, or rule, or measure of money In England it is the *pound*. The "castor" is not the little piece of wood mentioned in the extract; *that* was only given to enable the Indians to count.

Voyageur—(vwa-yah-zur,—the first "a" as in "what"; "zur," as in "azure") a boatman and carrier on Canadian rivers.

NOTE.—In 1870, the whole of the Hudson Bay territory was, by the act of the British Parliament, handed over to the Dominion of Canada, on condition of

giving to the H. B. Company 300,000 pounds sterling, and one-twentieth of all the land. In the same year the province of Manitoba (*See* "Destruction of Red River Colony") was formed, and in 1876 the District of Keewatin, which has its own governor and council; the rest of the country is called the North West Territory. For a map and an excellent description of the whole region, with historical notes, *see* the last edition of Campbell's Geography.

HISTORY OF VANCOUVER ISLAND.

Cook—Captain James Cook was born in the year 1728, went to sea at an early age, and soon became an excellent sailor. After a voyage of survey to Labrador and Newfoundland, he sailed for the Pacific in 1768, discovering Tahiti and many other islands, and coasting New Zealand; in 1770 he discovered Australia. After another voyage of three years in the Pacific, he started, in 1776, to find the North West Passage around America, intending to sail through Behring Strait around into the Atlantic; but, unhappily, he was killed at Hawaii by the natives.

Two years afterwards—The quarrel spoken of here took place more than ten years later than the extract says.

Transfer—That is, to receive from the Spaniards, officially, the transfer of the island from the power of Spain to that of England.

Lease—possession of property, given by the owners to another person, under certain conditions for a number of years.

Imperial government—the government of Great Britain; it is called "imperial" because it rules over the governments of the British possessions in other parts of the world.

Gold was discovered—The chief gold mines in British Columbia are along the valley of the Fraser River. The chief mines are Cariboo, Kootenay, Omineca, and Cassiar.

Colony—That is, Great Britain set up a regular government there under officers sent out from England.

Nominated council—The governor appoints, or *names* (Latin, "nomino," to name) this council himself.

Executive—those members of the government who form the *cabinet*, and who must see that the laws made by parliament are carried out, or *executed*.

Unassisted nature—growing of their own accord, without the care of the farmer.

To be enriched—This is the object of "require," and to "render" is used adverbially with the same verb.

Whilst—The sentence following this word is not an adverbial subordinate of the preceding one; "whilst" is equal to "and."

Gigantic pine—We hear of cedar trees in California over thirty feet in diameter at the base, and three hundred feet high.

While rich, etc.—"While" has here the meaning of "and," and connects a compound sentence; it sometimes means "but," and likewise connects a compound sentence; when it signifies *time*, as in "the dog howled while the bell was ringing," the sentence following is adverbial.

Undulating—covered with little hills and valleys, like the waves on the ocean. (Latin, *unda*, a wave).

Added to its—The best way to deal with this phrase is to supply "which must be," or some such words; the antecedent of "which" being the sentence "it guards . . continent."

NOTE.—In 1866 Vancouver Island was united to British Columbia, and in 1871 the whole province entered the Dominion. *See* last edition of Campbell's Geography.

FISHERIES OF BRITISH COLUMBIA.

Tenpenny nails—In classifying nails according to the size, the weight per thousand is taken as the standard. In tenpenny nails there are supposed to be *ten* pounds to the thousand; in twelvepenny ones, twelve pounds; and so on. The English tenpenny nail is 2¾ inches long, the American one, 3 inches. "Penny," in this use, is said to be a corruption of the word "pound."

Gaff—properly a staff with a stout iron hook on one end.

Shoals—Fishermen say "*schools* of fish."

Ova—the plural of the Latin word *ovum*, an egg; here it means fish eggs, or "roes."

In Canada and elsewhere there are large establishments where fish ova are hatched out; and when the little fish, or *fry*, are large enough they are put into rivers and lakes that need them, where they increase in size and numbers. The ova is often carried across the ocean in steamers.

Reach the head, etc.—This is why our law requires that every man who builds a dam across a stream, must also construct a fish-ladder, or slope, in it. The fish cannot leap over the dam; but the "ladder" being very slanting, they can swim up through the water running down it.

Cascades—These are little water-falls, or a succession of little water-falls; "rapids" are produced by the water in a river passing over a sloping bottom; "cataracts" are formed by the water of a river falling straight down for a great many feet.

Phenomenon—The plural is "phenomena."

Sturgeon—This fish has no proper mouth, only a hole in the lower part of its head; it sucks in its food. It has no skeleton, its *bones* being in the form of five or six rows of plates on its sides and back, a sharp ridge being in the centre of each plate.

CHINOOK INDIANS.

Chinooks—These Indians live in the south-eastern part of British Columbia, along the Columbia River.

Fort Vancouver—*See* "Hudson Bay Company," last paragraph.

Ultra-marine—a beautiful, durable, sky-blue color. Latin, "ultra," beyond; mare (mä-ree) the sea.

THE LOST HUNTER.

Stoop a listening ear—Sounds can be heard at a much greater distance by placing the ear near the ground.

Blazes—marks made on trees by chipping off a piece of the bark.

His sinuous path, etc.—The construction is: "His sinuous path wound, by (means of) blazes, among . . round, through . . boughs." Sinuous means *winding*.

Between—connects "was seen" and "architecture."

Fraught—an old past-participial form of the verb "to freight."

Tangled architecture—Explain the meaning.

Grotesquely—like a *grotto*, or cave. The roof and floor of grottos in limestone regions are covered with innumerable odd shapes; this is caused by the lime in the water that trickles through the roof, separating and adhering to the roof and floor.

Hemlock's spire—Is this *spire* anything like a church spire?

Antlered dweller—the deer. The hunter had started a deer, and in the long, eager chase, he had paid no attention to the way he was going, made no marks by which he could find his way back. When the deer was at length taken, the hunter turned homeward; but his path was lost; and he sunk beneath hunger, weariness, cold, and the fierce wintry storm.

Run-way—the bed of a little brook.

As o'er—"O'er" is here an adverb, qualifying "whistled," etc.

Billowy wreath—one that seemed to move backward and forward in the wind, like a billow on the ocean.

To whelm—It is best to supply some words before this verb, as, "it wished," or some such.

Tightened breath—What is meant?

Reason forsook, etc.—In the same way people, when dying of hunger or of thirst, dream of food or of water.

His cabin roof o'erspread—The meaning is not quite plain here; perhaps the writer means that, "his cabin roof was spread out before him," or "over him"; if so, "is" must be supplied before "o'erspread."

Before his swimming—The hunter now thinks that he sees his wife coming to help him.

Those accents . . ear—The words "never again" are understood before "those," and "will" before "speak."

Ithuriel wand—Ithuriel was the name of the angel that, with his spear, touch-

ed Satan who, in the form of a toad, was sitting at the ear of the sleeping Eve; the touch of the spear caused Satan to resume his true form. (*See* "Paradise Lost," Book IV., line 810).

The spring is here said to be like Ithuriel,—its touch causes the earth to change its appearance.

Winter chains—Why is winter compared to chains?

Bones beside—"Beside" connects "wove" with "bones."

A FEMALE CRUSOE.

Crusoe—Boys will know all about this word.

Coppermine river—east of Great Bear Lake, and emptying into Coronation Gulf.

It was inferred—The antecedent of "it" is the sentence "the existence . . continent."

Dead letter—of no value.

Resources—plans, or means employed to do what one wishes.

Athapuscow—Athabasca.

Moons that had passed—Do *we* measure time by moons? *See* derivation of "month."

When asked that question—Supply "she was" before "asked." "Question" is here called the object of "was asked"—a verb in the passive voice; because, in the active voice, "to ask" takes two objects after it.

The keeping up her fire—A participle form with "*the*" before it generally takes "of" after it.

By dint of—by force of;—always implies long-continued exertion.

Womanful—This word is not in the dictionary; it is somewhat different in meaning from "womanly";—the latter implying tenderness, gentleness, etc., the former a woman's spirit, determination, etc.

Moral—The "moral" of a story is the lesson to be drawn from it; "comment" is here used in much the same sense.

THE WOLVERINE.

Trail—track or path.

Impunity—unpunished; without receiving any harm.

Wanton malevolence—"Malevolence" means ill-will; "wanton malevolence" would mean that there is in reality no more cause for the ill-will, nor for the bad acts to which it prompts, than there is for the acts of a crazy man.

Dead-fall—a trap which, when sprung, lets fall a log or heavy piece of timber, killing the animal beneath.

Ferreted out—searched out carefully and fully, as a ferret would. The ferret is a small animal of the weasel kind employed to hunt out rabbits, etc.

DESTRUCTION OF THE RED-RIVER COLONY.

North-West party—There had always been a number of men who traded in the Hudson Bay territory in spite of the H. B. Company; these increased so greatly, that in 1783 they formed a company among themselves, called the "North-West Company," but having no charter from the British government. Disputes, in consequence, arose between the two companies; but nothing serious occurred till, in 1812, Lord Selkirk, a shareholder in the H. B. Company formed a small settlement—the Red River Colony—on the Red River; this country the N. W. Company claimed as theirs, and twice drove the young colony to Pembina. In 1815 the conflict mentioned in the extract took place; this so alarmed the companies that, in 1821, they united.

Half-starved colonists—This state of things resulted from the plunder of the settlement by the N. W. Company's servants; but it was made worse by the first appearance of the grasshoppers there in 1818-19. In the winter of 1819-20 the people had to go for seed to the nearest settlement in the United States—a thousand miles. The troubles of the colony ceased when the rival companies united in 1821.

Legal restraint—That is, what they were forbidden by law to do.

Moral obligation—"Obligation" literally means "that which binds,"—a duty one person owes to another; a "legal" obligation is one which the law compels us to fulfil; a "moral"

obligation, on the contrary, is one which no *law* compels us to fulfil, but which we are bound to fulfil, nevertheless, because we have received some favor from another, or stand in some relation to him, which imposes a duty on us.

As suited—Supply "it."

The flower—the chief, best part.

Now discerned—Supply "who were."

Chevy Chase—That is, "the hunting in the Cheviot Hills." According to the famous old ballad of "Chevy Chase," a fierce battle was fought in the reign of Henry IV., in the Cheviot Hills, between the Scotch and the English; of 1500 English, 53 were left; of 2000 Scotch, 55. Historians say there was no such battle.

Half-breeds—In the Northwest, persons, one of whose parents,—generally the mother,—was an Indian.

Extirpation—rooting out; destruction even to the very last, or root. (Latin, "stirps," a root).

NOTE.—In 1871 the Red River Settlement, or Fort Garry as it was often called, together with some additional territory, was created a province under the name of Manitoba, and entered the Dominion; its size is about 14,500 square miles. *See* Campbell's Geography, last edition.

HIAWATHA'S SAILING.

LONGFELLOW.—This greatest of American poets was born at Portland, Maine, in 1807. Shortly after graduating at Bowdoin College, New Jersey, he became professor of Modern Languages in the same college. In 1835 he was appointed to a like position in Harvard University, at Cambridge, Mass., which he still holds. Outre Mer (1835) was his first published work; Evangeline, in 1847; Golden Legend, in 1851; Hiawatha, in 1855. He has written a great many more beautiful poems besides these, all very picturesque, and very charming.

Hiawatha—Mr. Longfellow says that, the Indians have a tradition of a person of miraculous birth called by different names, Hiawatha, among the rest, who cleared their rivers, forests and fishing grounds, and taught the arts of peace.

The scene of the poem is among the Ojibways, on the southern shore of Lake Superior.

As Hiawatha is a supernatural being, he can make trees, animals, etc., understand him; and he can understand them.

Yellow bark—The inside of birch-bark is yellow; the outside, white.

Moon of leaves—June. So in Coleridge's "Ancient Mariner,"

"A sound as of a hidden brook
In the leafy month of June."

Sheer—fully, completely; an adverb.

Fibrous roots . . to bind together—*See* the "bark twine" of the "Female Crusoe."

Tamarack—often called hackmatack; "larch" is another name.

Hedgehog—We know him best by the name of porcupine. The Indians color the quills and use them as ornaments. The porcupine does *not* shoot his quills, though some people believe he does.

Magic—*See* note on this word, under "Parting with the Esquimaux."

FOUNDING OF THE N. A. COLONIES.

Close of the fifteenth, &c.—Other discoverers of the New World were John Cabot (Cabo), 1497, who discovered Labrador; Sebastian Cabot, 1498, discovered Newfoundland, and sailed down the coast of the continent to Virginia; Amerigo Vespucci (Ah-mer-ee-go Vesputch-chee), 1498, coasted the eastern part of South America, and, as he gave the first popular account of the New World, it was called after his name.

In 1498, Vasco de Gama (gah-mah) discovered the way round the Cape of Good Hope to India.

Minute and practical details—that is, in surveying the coast, exploring bays and rivers, taking soundings, &c., &c., and making maps of the whole. Columbus and others had discovered a new world, and then it remained for others to find out all the particulars about it and make use of them.

Leaving, &c.—this is a bad sentence; as it stands, the word "leaving" cannot be parsed; for there is no pronoun, expressed or understood, with which it is connected. We must change the construction, and make it either, "If we leave out of view," &c., or, "The efforts of . being left out of view, &c.":—this latter being an absolute phrase.

Efforts of the Spaniards—They colonized the West Indies, Florida, Mexico, all S. America, except Brazil.

Turn them to account—make use of them for their own advantage,—as trading with the Indians, fishing, &c., &c.

Basque (*bask*)—a race of people living in France and Spain in the region of the western Pyrenees; they are neither French nor Spanish, but are thought to be of the same race as the Turks.

Breton—belonging to Brittany (French, *Bretagne*), the north-west peninsula of France; the people, who are of the same race as the Welsh, or the Scotch Highlanders, are hardy sailors.

Newfoundland—*new-fun-land* (last syllable strongly accented) is the invariable pronunciation in the Maritime Provinces (*See* "Voyage of the Golden Hind.")

Verazzano—pronounce, *ver-adz-zah-no*.

Francis I.—king of France, a contemporary of Henry VIII. of England.

Jacques Cartier—pronounce, *jack* ("j" like "z" in azure), *car-t'-ya* ("car" as in "carry"): "Jacques" in English is *James*. For an account of Cartier, Champlain, Roberval, Verazzani, *see* Hist. of Canada.

Anticosti—so called from the Indian name, "Natiscotie."

St. Lawrence—(French, *St. Laurent*)—so called from the Gulf of St. Lawrence, which name was given to it by Cartier, when, on his second voyage, he entered it on August 10, 1535, St. Lawrence's day.

Roberval—he was appointed governor of the new colony, but he and Cartier did not agree, and so after a year he went home to France; six years afterwards he set out again, but was never heard of more.

Transatlantic—across (trans) the Atlantic.

Civil dissensions—the wars between the Catholics and Protestants, and that between Henry IV. and those who wished to keep him from being king.

Civil wars—are wars carried on between the inhabitants of the same country.

Discord being brought . . . throne—Turn this independent phrase into a sentence. All such phrases can be turned into adverbial sentences.

Champlain—pronounce "ch" like "sh."

Amicable confederacies — friendly unions, or agreements, in which each party is bound to help the other.

Humbled them—This was done chiefly by means of the guns of the French, of which the Indians were very much afraid.

Fostered—took care of the settlements; a *foster-child* is one adopted by a person and brought up as his own.

Consolidating her supremacy—making her power, her possession of the new country sure, or *solid*,—so that no other nation could drive the French away

Established footing—her power was made sure or *established* in Nova Scotia.

Nova Scotia—Latin for "New Scotland."

Acadia—or rather, Acadie (*ah-cah-dee*). Dr. D[illegible], of McGill College, Montreal, says this is an Indian word meaning *place* or *region*; this word occurs in other names in Nova Scotia, as Tra*cadie*, Shubena*cadie*. Acadia extended to the St. Croix river, between New Brunswick and Maine, thus including Nova Scotia and New Brunswick.

Pioneer—one who goes before others to prepare the way. In the army it means a soldier whose duty it is to make roads, dig trenches, mines, &c.

Raleigh—*See* note under "Voyage of the Golden Hind." *See* the same for "Sir H. Gilbert."

Disastrous—In former days there were men called *astrologers* (from "astron" a star), who pretended they could foretell events from the appearance of the stars. If the stars were not favorable, it was termed a *disaster* ("dis," apart, or away from; astron); compare "ill-st[illegible]." Of course, people, and good, se[illegible] people too, believed in these astr[illegible]s.

Ausp[illegible]—This word belongs to the same cla[illegible] "disaster," only the events were foretold from the flight or singing of birds.—Latin, "avis," bird; "spicio," to behold. This was the custom among the ancient Romans.

Possession was taken of the country—*See* note on this expression under "The Buccaneers." Compare the two.

Vicissitudes—repeated changes, from prosperous to the opposite.

Often privations—Parse these words; also, "contests."

Took root—The colony is compared to a tree which strikes its roots into the ground, and so grows.

Virginia—discovered by one of Raleigh's expeditions, and called by this name by Queen Elizabeth, because she was unmarried.

Plantation—here this word means "colony," a sense now but little used; the ordinary meaning is a large farm or estate in warm countries devoted to raising such crops as sugar-cane, tobacco, cotton, &c., &c. We never hear of a *wheat* plantation.

Exodus—*See* Note under "Norwegian Colonies in Greenland."

Pilgrim Fathers-(*See* 'pilgrim' in the dictionary). In Queen Elizabeth's reign there were a great many people—protestants—who did not like the form of worship in the Church of England, and so would not attend it; they were therefore fined,

imprisoned, and some of them even put to death. "Brownist" was the name given to these people A good many of them left England and went to Holland; but, getting tired of that country, they set sail for America in the "M[illegible]wer," and landed at Plymouth, in Massachusetts, in December, 1620. There they could worship God as they pleased. *See* Mrs. Hemans' poem, "The Pilgrim Fathers," beginning with.

"The breaking waves dashed high
On a stern and rock-bound coast."

Laid the foundation—started or began. These "States" are compared to a house; we begin a house with the foundation, so these Pilgrim Fathers, being the first settlers, *began* the "States."

Inaugurate—begin, commence, enter upon. The men who, among the Romans, took the auspices (see above), were called "augurs,"—a word of the same root as "auspices," and if the auspices were favorable, the Romans immediately entered upon what they had to do. Though we use the word "inaugurate" now, we know that birds can tell us nothing about the a[illegible] of men.

Independence of a continent[illegible] is not quite true. Canada forms [illegible] of America, and is *not* indepen[illegible] of Great Britain.

Asylum, &c.,—a place of protection. From the beginning of Elizabeth's reign to the end of Charles II's, the Catholics were bitterly persecuted; they were fined, imprisoned, and under Elizabeth, put to death for their religion. They were allowed to hold no office, could not be lawyers or doctors, could not vote;—these were some of their *disabilities*,—what they were *unable* to be or to do.

Carolina—the Latin for Charles is "Carolus."

Puritan—a name given by way of contempt, in Elizabeth's reign, to those people belonging to the Church of England, who desired a greater *purity* in the church; they wished to be as different as possible from the Catholics in their manner of worship. They were persecuted by Elizabeth and her two successors; the Brownists were the extreme type of these Puritans, and left the Church of England. In America it was a long time before they themselves learned that every person has a right to worship God as he pleases.

Grants of land, &c.—The king was supposed to own all the newly discovered land, and so could give it to whom he pleased In Canada we have "crown lands,"—that is, lands not owned by any one man, but by the country; the Government sells this land, or the trees on it, or does with it what is thought best for the country

Wm. Penn—a celebrated Quaker who lived in the reigns of Charles II. James II., and William III. Although he had a grant of the land from the king, he preferred to buy it honestly from the Indians, to whom it really belonged; the colony thus escaped the Indian wars.

Quaker—or "Friend," as they call themselves; a religious sect founded by one George Fox in Cromwell's time. They are opposed to all war; they have no sacraments, and no ministers in their churches; any one speaks who feels inclined to; or, as they say, "as the Spirit moves them." They often use a peculiar style of language, saying "thee" where other people use "you."

Pennsylvania—that is Penn's woods, (Latin "sylva," woods).

New York—called such from James, Duke of York, to whom Charles II. granted it. The Dutch called it "New Netherlands;" New York city was "New Amsterdam."

Henry Hudson.—This famous English navigator, while in the service of the Dutch, discovered in 1609, the Hudson River;—the Dutch, consequently, claiming the surrounding country as theirs. In the following year he was sent out by the English to explore the Northern Seas, and discovered the strait and bay now called by his name. His crew mutinied, and putting him, his son, and some others into open boats, sent them adrift; they were never heard of afterwards.

When—This word does not connect the clause following it to the preceding one as adverbial of time; the two sentences are rather separate; "when" here denotes not *time* but *order*.

Planted—settled. (*See* "plantation above).

Swamped—overpowered, destroyed. A boat "swamps" when it fills with water.

Note—Pupils will not, it is to be hoped, imitate Mr. Pedley's English:—swamped, planted, when, leaving—and others not noted, are all bad.

THE GREAT AUK.

Newfoundland—*See* the Geography; also the note on the pronunciation, under "Founding of the N. A. Colonies."

Fishing-banks—These banks are shallow parts of the ocean, lying off the east and south-east of the island; they are about 600 miles long and 220 broad; the water on them is from 150 to 500 feet deep. *See* the Geography.

Westermann islands—off the south coast of Iceland.

As may be supposed—Supply "it."

Dodo—a large, clumsy bird, now extinct; it was found by the Dutch in the island of Mauritius, about the year 1600. The Dutch are said to have destroyed it by continually hunting it for food.

VOYAGE OF THE GOLDEN HIND.

Sir Humphrey Gilbert. He was a half-brother of Raleigh; like the latter he took part in the busy scenes of the time,—in war, commerce, privateering against the Spanish, discovering and colonizing. His privateering was not always successful; the last expedition of the kind being particularly unfortunate.

Raleigh—(Sir Walter), the "Shepherd of the Ocean," as his friend, the poet Spenser, called him, was born in 1552. Possessed of a most impetuous and generous nature, he left college when only seventeen to take part with the Huguenots in the civil wars in France; thence to Holland to fight, and in 1780 to Ireland; three years afterwards he went with Gilbert to Newfoundland; then he tried to found a colony in North Carolina; when the war with Spain broke out he was foremost in the fight, fitting out privateers to catch treasure-ships; trying again to found colonies; again in the fleet for an attack on the hated Spaniards,—his was a life of intense activity. While Queen Elizabeth lived good fortune attended him,—for he was high in her favor,—and he received large estates both in England and in Ireland. Raleigh was put in prison by James I. for plotting against him, and while there he wrote his unfinished "History of the World." Tired of prison, he was released to go on an expedition to a gold-mine in America, which he said he knew; but he attacked the Spaniards, was defeated, and on his return to England in 1618, put to death by James to please the Spaniards.

Impoverished—made poor; the *disasters* were especially the partial loss of a small fleet sent out against the Spaniards, etc.

Patent—a document obtained from Government granting certain privileges. Gilbert's was to colonize, and to have the profits of certain lands whose names were mentioned in the paper, for a certain time. Among us, when a man invents a new machine, etc., etc., he applies to the Government for a *patent* which gives him the sole right to manufacture and sell that machine for a certain length of time. The document is *open* at one end, hence its name from the Latin "pateo,"—to be open.

Chronicler—one who writes down accounts of events in the order of time in which they occur.

Faculty—here means craft, trade, calling;—this use of the word has passed away. We now use it in the sense of dexterity, knack, cleverness, and of powers of the mind or body.

Shipwright—This word is almost gone out of use; we say *ship-carpenter* instead; we still have millwright, wheelwright, etc. *Wright* is another form of the word *work*.

Mineral men—miners.

Omitting—This word qualifies "we."

Morris-dancers—That is, *Moorish* dancers; these dancers, in imitation of the Moors of Spain, were dressed fantastically, often like noted persons of former days, such as Robin Hood and his company. They had bells around their ankles, rode hobby-horses, etc. *See* "Lady of the Lake," Canto vi:

"There morricers, with bell at heel,
And blade in hand, their mazes wheel."

Conceits—here means fancy things,—toys, trinkets, etc.,—an American would say "notions."

Barque—(or bark), a three-masted vessel, the two front ones having square sails, and the other a sail like a schooner.

Looming—When an object "looms up" it is always indistinct, as if in a mist, seems larger than it really is, and is *generally* distant.

Dense fog—Everybody has heard of the dense fogs of Newfoundland; they are

caused, it is said, by the warm waters of the Gulf Stream meeting, near this island, the cold currents from the Arctic Ocean.

It was just—What does "it" stand for here?

Ships of various nations—These were engaged in the fisheries.

St. John's—In Newfoundland; St. John, in New Brunswick; St. Johns, in Quebec. Note the spelling.

Salvo of Ordnance—a discharge of cannon, as a salute. Ordnance—large guns, cannon.

Ten-ton cutter—*See* "cutter" in Chambers' dictionary. A *ton*, in measuring the capacity of a vessel, consists of 40 cubic feet.

Bearings—the position, or direction of one from another.

Like the swan—People once believed that when the swan was about to die it sang beautifully.

They in the Delight—We would rather say now *those*.

Winding—wind-ing, putting *wind* into, or blowing, a musical instrument; the past tense and past participle is properly "winded," though we generally see "wound"; as "the hunter *wound* his horn." *See* note under "Death of Keeldar."

Haughtboys—spelled now "hautboys." *See* dictionary.

Battel—beating, or sounding; "left"—ended, left off.

Lowering—pronounced *lou-er-ing*, threatening, looking dark. This is the same word as "lowering" (*lo-ering*), pronounced differently to show the different meaning; when a storm threatens, the clouds are "*lower*."

Cast away—wrecked, lost. It is not known whether the "Squirrel" was swamped, or struck an iceberg.

Twelve of the clock—Notice this form. How do *we* say it?

Whereof—of which—that is, the lights. This word is not much used now.

Us in the—That is, "us who were in," etc. "In" may be parsed as connecting "us" and "Hind."

Withal—*with* that; thereupon.

As was this—That is, as this purpose was. Parse "this."

To possess. etc.—are infinitives used as nouns in apposition with "purpose."

SIR H. GILBERT.

The corsair—In this poem Death is represented as a pirate, sailing southward with a fleet of icebergs; he meets Sir Humphrey's little vessel, and, seizing it as his prey, crushes it and bears it onward into the Gulf Stream, where all disappears.

Fleet of ice—*See* note on "Glacier," under "Parting with the Esquimaux."

East wind—In poetical language, at least, the east wind is always injurious.

Pennons—The little streams of water running down the icebergs, and blown about by the wind, were the flags of Death's ship. (*See* "pennant," in Chambers' Etymological Dictionary).

Sails of white sea-mist—Usually, though not always, the presence of icebergs causes fog; hence, when vessels in the spring or summer, are crossing the Atlantic in the latitude of Canada, they sail very slowly when in a fog; for it is not known at what moment they may run upon an iceberg. A strict look-out has to be kept all the time.

Leaden shadows—dark and threatening. A lead-colored sky always foretells a storm.

Main—This word, here meaning "sea," is the same as in "main land," "might and main," "the Spanish Main," "may," "might," and even "many."

Campobello—an island belonging to New Brunswick, lying close to the mainland, directly off the boundary between New Brunswick and the United States.

Should—was to; this is an old use of "should."

Watch—At sea, a "watch" is a division of time, consisting generally of four hours, during which a part of the crew attend to the working of the vessel, while the rest are busy at other things, or asleep.

Out of the sea—*See* note above, on "Sails of white sea-mist," and "Fleet of ice."

The moon . . clouds—This stanza is about Death's fleet, and refers to the great height of the icebergs, as if they reached the moon and stars. *See* note on "Glacier," under "Parting with the Esquimaux."

Rake—to strike against, or scrape.

Grappled—seized hold of. The poet says that the icebergs, or the fields of ice, surrounded the vessel.

Ground-swell—a swelling of the ocean extending very far down, as if to the *ground*, and caused by a severe storm. The waves of the ground-swell often go in an opposite direction to the wind.

Spanish main—This is properly the

northern coast of South America; probably the poet includes the coast of Georgia and Florida too, for in the time of Gilbert the Spanish owned those countries.

No change of place—because the vessel was enclosed by the ice and shut out from everything but the sky.

NOTE.—*See* the sketch of Longfellow, under "Hiawatha," and that of Gilbert, under, "Voyage of the Golden Hind."

THE MOUNTAINEER IN NEWFOUNDLAND.

Having put—This is in construction with "I."

Appearance—Supply "there being."

Disintegrated—decayed, fallen to pieces.

It was apparent that it—the first "it" stands for "It . . island"; and the second "it," for "to walk . . island." Teachers should always require the pupils to point out what these representative "it's" stand for.

My Indian and self—"Self" should be "myself." For the use of "self," *see* Abbott's "How to Parse."

Micmac—There are some of this tribe still in Nova Scotia.

Newfoundland—For the pronunciation of this word, *see* note under "Founding of the N. A. Colonies."

Venison—ven-zn; generally the flesh of deer; but in olden times it meant the flesh of animals taken in hunting,—Latin, "venatio," hunting game. *See* the story of Esau's "venison" in the Bible.

Which was readily—What is the antecedent of "which"?

Gunwale—pronounced "gun-nell." *See* Chambers' Dictionary.

Temporary—lasting for a short time.

Portages—These are places on rivers where, on account of rocks or waterfalls, boats, etc., have to be *carried* (Latin, "*porto*") to the water beyond.

We had just found—The object of "had found" is "which required it."

St. John's—*See* the note on this word under "Voyage of the Golden Hind."

SABLE ISLAND.

Sable island—This is but the top part above water, of an immense sand-bank about one-third the size of Nova Scotia. Dr. Dawson, of McGill College, says that "this island has been thrown up by the wind and waves;" and that "the Gulf Stream and the Arctic current meet on its shores."

Attempt at colonization—In 1598, La Roche, on his way to Canada (*see* Hist. of Canada), landed 40 convicts on Sable Island, intending to return for them; but owing to the stormy weather he was not able to do as he intended, and when at last he returned in 1603, only 12 were left; these were taken off. It is said that, in 1518, Baron de Léry tried to found a colony there, but failed; he, however, left some cattle on the island.

Notoriety—no-to-ri-et-y; being well known for something not good.

Every article—such as life-boats, rockets, ropes, etc., with food and clothing.

Judge Haliburton—Thomas Haliburton was born in Windsor, Nova Scotia, in 1796; in 1840 he was made judge of the Supreme Court of N. S.; in 1850 he r moved to England, and entered the House of Commons. He is best known as the author of "Sam Slick, the Clockmaker," "Nature and Human Nature," etc.

Uudulating—like the *waves* of the sea (Latin, "unda," a wave), consisting of hills and hollows.

Whortleberry—Worcester gives "whŭr-tl-ber-ry" as the pronunciation of this word; but in America, at least, "huck-l-ber-ry" is the only one heard.

Indigenous—in-didg-en-us, belonging to a country by nature, not introduced from another country.

Consists of naked sand—It often happens that one storm will make a channel right across the island, dividing it into two; while the next one will close the channel again.

Such an extent as to, etc.—"As to . . alive" qualifies extent, or rather is in apposition with "such."

Danger attending—In the winter of 1875-6 the people on the island suffered greatly owing to their numbers being increased by two wrecked crews, and to the supply vessel being detained by

storms. This vessel usually makes monthly trips to the island from Halifax.

Naturalization—When a man comes to Canada from any country not in the British possessions, there are some things that the law does not allow him to do, such as to vote, or to hold office; but he may obtain these and all other rights of Canadians, if he goes to the proper person and takes an oath that he wishes to give up all connection (or "allegiance" as it is called) with the land of his birth; this act is called "naturalization," and the man is regarded then as a subject *by nature* or *birth* of our sovereign. Other countries have similar laws.

Annapolis—This name (from the Greek, "polis," a city) was given in honor of Queen Anne, when, in 1713, the English took Nova Scotia from the French.

Quit-rent—a yearly rent paid for land by a tenant who is then free, *or quit*, from all other demands.

Nature of the food—dead bod[...]

THE COAL FIELDS OF NOVA SCOTIA.

Furnaces- to produce steam, melt metals, etc., etc.

Nearly every state—Captain Nares brought back specimens of coal from the Arctic regions in 1876. British Columbia, Vancouver Island and the North-West territory all contain coal.

Coal measures—layers of rock that contain coal. The rock that geologists call *Carboniferous*, is the only kind that contains coal.

Inexhaustible supply—A great many people in Great Britain are fearful lest their coal mines should give out very soon.

Coal Fields—The chief coal mines are—in New Brunswick, the Albert in Albert county, and Coal Creek in Kent; in Nova Scotia,—the Joggins, Maccan and Spring Hill, in Cumberland; Albion, Acadia, Nova Scotia, Bear Creek, New Glasgow, Sutherland's River, and the mines of the Montreal and Pictou Company, and of the German Company, in Picton; in Cape Breton,—Sydney, Cow Bay, Glace Bay.

Sinews—As the sinews are necessary for the body, so coal is necessary for prosperous commerce. Explain this fully.

Shale—This word is of the same root as "shell"; it is a rock that *shells* off like slate.

Sir C. Lyell—one of the greatest English geologists. His chief works are "Principles of Geology" and "Elements of Geology." He died in 1875.

Fossil—This name is given by geologists to the petrified remains of animals and plants found buried in the rocks. It comes from the Latin "fodio" (fossus), to dig; hence, "something dug up."

Rise more than sixty feet—This statement is true only of Chiegnecto Bay, and more especially of the mouth of the Peticodiac River. The cause of these high tides is as follows:—the Bay of Fundy is wide at its mouth, and gradually narrows off almost to a point in Chiegnecto Bay; the shores are everywhere very steep,—mainly perpendicular cliffs on the Nova Scotia side. When the tide is rising, the water entering the mouth of the bay finds itself forced into a narrower and narrower space as it goes onward; it cannot spread itself out owing to the lofty shores, and so, as it must go somewhere, it rises in perpendicular height. Thus, as we might expect, the tides are highest where the water is most confined, that is, in Chiegnecto Bay.

Tides—This word has had its present meaning,—the rise and fall of the water in the sea,—only for the last two or three hundred years; it originally meant *season, opportunity*. The old meaning is seen in the words Whitsun*tide*, Christmas*tide*; and in the proverb "time and tide wait for no man," though in this expression some people wrongly think it refers to the sea. It was, no doubt, the flow of the water back and forth at stated "tides" or seasons, that caused the name to be transferred to the water.

Sigillaria—sidg-il-lā-ria. These fossil stems are so called because they have on them marks resembling seals,—Latin, "sigilla," seals or stamps; these marks are the spots on which the leaves grew.

Equisetaceæ—ek-qui-se-tā-se-ee,—from the Latin "equus," a horse, and "seta," stiff hair.

Repeating the story—That is, each successive bed of coal was formed exactly like the first one. "Repeating" qualifies "first."

NOTE.—Unfortunately the only coal found in the Dominion is "soft" coal; the "hard" or *anthracite* kind comes from Pennsylvania. In Queen Charlotte Island, north of Vancouver Island, there is said to be anthracite coal. In England the term "sea-coal" is sometimes given to "soft" coal, because it was brought to London *by sea* in vessels, not like charcoal which came in from the country in wagons.

DISCOVERY OF AMERICA.

"Robertson" (William), a popular preacher and historian, and principal of the University of Edinburgh; died in 1791. He wrote a "History of Scotland," a "History of Charles V.," and a "History of America." His writings contain a very large number of words derived from the Latin.

Columbus—(*Colombo*, in Italian; *Colon*, in Spanish).—This greatest of all navigators was born at Genoa in 1436, or 1446, as some say. Little is known of his early life, except that he was a careful student of navigation and geography. He early formed the idea that, as the earth was round, the East Indies could be reached by sailing west; so he set off to Lisbon, then the centre of maritime enterprise, and laid his plans before the king, John II. Disgusted with the treatment he received in Lisbon, Columbus went to Spain, to the court of Ferdinand and Isabella; here, after long years of waiting and attempted journeys to England and elsewhere, he got his wish; three ships, fitted out, it is said, by the queen who sold her jewels to get the necessary money, were put under his command, and he started from Palos westward over an unknown sea. With the greatest difficulty, and with danger even to his own life from the frightened and mutinous sailors, he pressed on, and at length reached one of the Bahama islands, San Salvador, it is thought, Oct. 12, 1492. After discovering Cuba, Hayti, and other islands, he returned to Spain, March 15, 1493, and was received with the greatest joy, as one returned from the dead. In September of the same year he started again, and discovered Jamaica and other islands; in 1498, on his third voyage, he coasted the northern part of S. America, and discovered the Orinoco; but on arriving at the Spanish colony in Hayti, the governor put him in irons and sent him home a prisoner, to the great indignation of the Spanish people. He never obtained satisfaction for this, because his enemies were favored by the ungrateful Ferdinand. One more voyage that turned out badly and Columbus returned to Spain to find Isabella dead, and to die in poverty at Valladolid. Ferdinand gave him a splendid funeral and a monument, as if that could make up for his unjust treatment. After some years, the remains of Columbus were taken up and removed to Hayti; but early in the present century they were again taken up, and now repose in Havana. Columbus, unlike most men, never allowed the wrongs he suffered to dishearten him in his great work.

Wished rather, etc.—The people thought that Columbus was leading his sailors to certain death.

Altered his course—Where would Columbus have made land if he had continued to sail due west from Palos?

To tack—This is a sea term, meaning to change the course of a vessel.

It must ever be borne in mind that "infinitives" are to be parsed according to their office in a sentence. Here "to tack" is an infinitive, the object of "required"; farther down, "to have," etc., is an infinitive in apposition with "*it*," as are also, "to rekindle," and "to think," etc.; "to quell" is an infinitive used as an adverb, expressing the purpose of "employing," etc.

Provided—This word has here really the force of a conjunction; it may, however, be regarded as forming with "it being," understood, an absolute phrase. An absolute (or independent) phrase can *always* be turned into an adverbial sentence.

Sounding line—or "lead," as it is usually called on shipboard, consists of a small-sized rope with a heavy "lead" or "sinker" attached to one end, and marked off into fathoms by pieces of leather, etc.; nowadays tubes are often fastened to the lead for the purpose of obtaining a little of the mud of the sea-bottom.

Such land birds as—"As" is here a relative pronoun.

Cane—a piece of sugar-cane, or some such plant.

Nigna—pronounce—*neen-yah.*

He ordered the sails *to be furled*—Mr. Abbott would call this infinitive, "complementary"; so also, "ships to lie to." *See* Abbott's "How to Parse."

Furled—rolled up.

Lie to—A vessel is said to "lie to" when she has part of her sails furled, and the rest arranged in such a manner as to stop her headway.

Keeping—This word is loosely used here; it can hardly, from the sense of the passage, refer to Columbus; the phrase may be regarded as an absolute one, "keeping," etc., being turned into 'strict watch being kept.' It might be allowable to take "keeping" as referring to 'ships,'—perhaps, the best way to deal with it.

Forecastle—Accent the first syllable strongly—(*see* Chambers' dictionary).

Worcester defines this word,—"In merchant ships the fore part of the vessel under the deck, where the sailors live." More commonly it is a house built on deck in the fore part of the vessel, and occupied by the common sailors only.

Pedro Guttierez—pronounced *pay-dro, goot-tee-a-râyth*, the "oo" as in "boot." Pedro—our "*Peter.*"

Salcedo—pronounced *sal-thay-do.*

Comptroller—*See* Chambers' Etymological Dictionary;—in this passage the word evidently means the sailing-master,—the one who had the management of the ships.

Land—San Salvador, one of the Bahamas.

Te Deum—a Latin hymn of thanksgiving beginning with "te Deum laudāmus"—we praise thee, O Lord—used in Roman Catholic churches; in the Church of England service the English translation is employed.

Took solemn possession—It was the practice on making a discovery of a new land, to erect the flag of the nation to which the discoverer belonged, and to leave it there,—to signify to whom the land belonged by right of discovery. In Canada the French hung up a shield with an inscription, instead of the flag.

Could not comprehend—Why could not the natives comprehend what the Spaniards were doing?

Foresee the consequences—destruction of the natives in the West Indies; colonists from all nations coming to the new land;—in short, America as it is. Illustrate more fully.

Children of the sun—The great god of the Mexicans and of these Caribs, was the sun; the ancient Persians (Gebers) and Arabians also worshipped the sun; Apollo, or Phœbus, was the sun-god of the old Greeks and Romans, and so was Balder of the old heathen English, Germans, Danes, etc. When these people had no knowledge of the true God, they deemed the sun their greatest benefactor, and so worshipped him.

The climate—It must be kept in mind that in western Europe the climate is much warmer than in the same latitude in eastern North America; this is caused by the warm waters of the Gulf Stream striking on the western coast of Europe, along with the warm south-west winds blowing off the Atlantic. The place where Columbus landed lies more than 600 miles further south than Spain.

Every herb, shrub, etc.—Name the native products of the West Indies that are brought into Canada.

Painted—Thus our wild Indians put on "war-paint" yet.

Transports of joy—showing their great joy by their actions, such as leaping, dancing, etc., etc.

Hawk-bells—In former times hawks were much used in hunting, and even as pets. When carried about in the hand with a bright hood over their head, they often had little bells fastened to their legs or around their neck.

Bauble—(or "bawble")—here means any trifling toy. Originally it meant a short stick with a comical-looking head carved on it, and carried by clowns, or jesters, in the households of kings or noblemen.

Trunk of a single tree—Compare Hiawatha's canoe.

Such provision as—Parse "as" here; compare note on "as" above.

NOTE.—It seems to be pretty well established that America had been reached by the Norwegians at least two hundred years before the time of Columbus.

THE PRAIRIES.

William Cullen Bryant, a distinguished American poet and journalist, was born in New Hampshire in 1784. After a short stay at college he began the practice of law in 1815; but, in company with a friend he started in 1825, the New York Review, a work more to his taste; in this paper most of his best poems first appeared. In 1826 he became chief editor of the New York "Evening Post," a leading Democratic paper; this post he held till within the last year (1877). The tone of all his writings is manly and pure. At a very early age he began to write poetry; at the age of nineteen he wrote "Thanatopsis," which still holds a high rank in literature. He has written a great many poems, magazine articles, "travels," and made translations from other languages. His "Lines to a Waterfowl" is well known. *See* note under "The Western Hunter."

No name—The word "prairie" is French. If the English people had at home vast plains like those in America, they would not have borrowed a name from the French; they would have had one of their own.

For the first—Supply "time" after "first."

Encircling—because there are no hills on the prairie to break the horizon, which is thus the same as at sea,—circular.

Undulations—*See* note under "Earthquake at Caraccas."

His gentlest—"Ocean" is masculine, perhaps on account of its size and power.

Rounded billows—This is the "rolling prairie."

The surface rolls—On bright days the shadows of the swiftly passing clouds seem, as they come to a hillock, bush, etc., to heave and sink like the waves of the ocean. This gives the hillock-covered prairie the appearance decribed in the poem.

Fluctuate—from the Latin "fluctus," a wave.

Who toss—Why is "who" used here, since the antecedent is not the name of a person?

Crisped—raised little ripples upon. How does this meaning resemble the ordinary one?

Sonora—the north-west state of Mexico. Is Mr. Bryant quite right here about the "brooks" flowing into the Pacific?

Calm Pacific—When, in 1521, Magellan first saw this ocean it was very calm, and he gave it the name of "Pacific," "the calm one"—in contrast with the stormy Atlantic. We know, however, that this "calm" ocean has its storms at times. *See* note on "Southern Ocean" under "The Buccaneers."

Island groves—Here and there little groves of trees are met with, surrounded by the wide prairie like an island by the sea.

With flowers-"With" connects "floor" and "flowers."

A nearer vault—On a wide level expanse the sky seems to be nearer than in a hilly country.

Eastern hills—Alleghany mountains, Green mountains, White mountains.

As o'er the verdant—In this stanza the author says, 'these prairies were once thickly peopled, and the mighty mounds prove it.' He is riding over their graves, —a sacrilegious act.

Mighty mounds—These mounds, or artificial hills, are found in large numbers in the Mississippi valley and elsewhere. In Alabama there is one 75 feet high and nearly a quarter of a mile around; they extend for 20 miles along the Scioto in Ohio; in the depth of forests they are seen covered with trees of many hundred of years growth. Some of these mounds are burial places, as those found in Canada, England, etc.; others seem to have been forts. Their great number and size required vast numbers of people to build them; hence it is believed the country was very populous at the time when they were constructed.

Greek was hewing . . Parthenon—"Greek" here refers particularly to the people of Athens. "Pentelicus" is a mountain near Athens famous for its fine marble from which Athenian sculptors made beautiful statues of men and women, and architects constructed magnificent buildings like the Parthenon This celebrated temple, sacred to the goddess Minerva, and built about 450 years before Christ, stood on a high rock, the "Acropolis" or upper city, in the midst of Athens. Some of the highly ornamented marble of the Parthenon is now in the British Museum in London, bearing the name of the "Elgin marbles."

Haply . . bison lowed—The poet here says that 'perhaps *(haply)* the bison (or buffalo of the prairies) was tame then and worked for the people, becoming wild after the people were destroyed.'

The red man came—There is a tradition existing among some of the western Indian tribes that their ancestors long ago came down from the north and found the country occupied by another race who lived in towns; the Indians wished to go through this country promising to do no harm, but the others dealt treacherously with them, whereupon the Indians attacked and destroyed them all.

Prairie wolf—a smaller and more cowardly animal than the common grey wolf.

Gopher—called also "the prairie dog"; a small animal of the squirrel kind, burrowing in the ground and living together in great colonies.

Save—This word is a preposition here; it must be supplied before "platforms" and "barriers"; these phrases all limit "all."

Unknown gods—That is, unknown to *us;* we know not the names of the gods they worshipped.

One by one—The first "one" is best regarded as in apposition with "strongholds,"—the apposition of a part with the whole.

Beleaguerers—This looks like a French word; but it is formed from the English words "be," and "lay"; the first is the same as in *be*spatter,—to spatter *all over, completely*. Hence "beleaguer" means to "lay all around" as an enemy lies around a city in order to take it.

Forced—broken into, captured.

Yielded himself to die—not 'lay down to die,' but 'gave himself up to the enemy who, he thought, would kill him'; but they pitied him and made him one of their own tribe.

Quickening—life giving. Compare 'the quick and the dead,' and "quick with life," farther on in the poem.

Has left, etc.—As the white man with his civilization advances the Indian departs; the eastern part of the prairies is already occupied by the "pale face," and the Indians are fighting to keep him from the rest.

Missouri's springs—the *river* Missouri.

Issues—What is meant?

Little Venice—The city of Venice is built on a great number of little islands, and so seems to rise out of the water; the houses of the beavers are likewise surrounded by the water;—so the poet calls a collection of beavers' houses a "little Venice."

The bison feeds no more—Wild animals of all kinds retreat as man's homes advance. The bison is now found in the more northern prairies only, and it is feared that in a few years they will become extinct, owing to the terrible destruction made among them by men who hunt them for their hides; these hides are our "buffalo robes."

Twice twenty leagues—This expression must not be taken literally; the poet merely means that the bisons keep far away from the dwellings of man.

Gentle quadrupeds—various species of deer.

A more adventurous, etc.—That is, the bee has gone further into the new lands than the white man has. The bee is said to have been brought to America from Europe, and to have since become wild.

Savannas—low, open plains or meadows; here the meaning is the same as prairie.

Golden age—The old Greeks used to say that, in the early ages of the world, man lived in innocence and peace; there were no wars, no wrong was done, no animal was killed for food; but man and beast alike lived on what the ground brought forth. This they called the "golden age," because it was better than other ages as gold is better than other metals.

Domestic hum—the hum of the *family* of bees

The poet is gazing on the prairie for the first time; it stretches away as far as the eye can reach, one great expanse of gentle hill and hollow, as if the heaving ocean had all at once stood still. As he gazes, the shadow of a cloud strikes the hills and they seem to roll and toss again as if once more alive.

Then, after dwelling on their beauty, he asks if these solitary plains were once filled with people, and if he is not now riding over their graves. The mounds answer "yes"; and he thinks how the now wild bison may have once drawn the plough through the rich soil, and golden grain waved above it, while happy human life was everywhere. But the wild Indian came down upon this happy country, destroyed its towns and slaughtered its inhabitants. Long years passed away; the red man in his turn disappears before the advancing 'pale-face.' The hum of the bee falls on the poet's ears, and as he listens, he thinks he hears again the sound of happy human life; again the plough is turning up the rich soil, the yellow grain is waving, as in the ancient days; the whole plain is filled once more with the abodes of man. A breeze strikes the poet's face; he starts from his dream and finds himself alone.

NOTE.—Mr. Bryant died June 12, 1878.

THE U. E. LOYALISTS.

Thirteen colonies—These were New Hampshire, Massachusetts, Rhode Island, Connecticut, New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Maryland, Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, and Georgia. Read carefully the cause of this war in the "History of England," reign of Geo. III.

Allegiance—*See* note on this word under "Conquest of Peru."

It was not without—"It" here stands for what precedes it.

Synonymous—having the same meaning, or nearly so; as "small" is synonymous with "little." In the extract the meaning is 'when we hear the name "U. E. Loyalist" we know the man was gallant, daring,' etc.

Whig—This word is said to be a Scotch word meaning "sour whey," as "Tory" means an Irish robber. These names were first given to the two political parties in England in the latter part of the reign of Charles II., during the hot dis-

putes over the proposal to prevent James Duke of York from becoming king on the death of his brother. The Tories favored James, the Whigs were against him. In England the Whigs are now called Liberals, and the Tories, Conservatives.

Taken from the French—When and by whom?

Perilous adventures—Many of us have heard from the lips of parents or grandparents wild tales of what these loyal people had to suffer, and of daring exploits performed against the "rebels."

It is very rarely indeed that any American writer refers to these "Tories" in any other way than in terms of the greatest scorn and contempt. It is pleasant to meet with such a man as Mr. Sabine, who tries to do justice to these brave men.

Royal army—the king's army.

Bergen—in New Jersey, near New York city.

Lines—fortifications, or the extent of ground protected or defended by a series of fortifications.

Continental army—the army of the revolted colonists,—the Americans.

Bayonet—This weapon receives its name, it is said, from the city of Bayonne in France where it was first manufactured.

Militia—literally, "soldiers." The *regular* soldiers are enlisted for the purpose of being such either in peace or in war; they are thoroughly drilled, and can be taken anywhere the government pleases. The militia are enlisted, or rather taken by lot, to defend the country when invaded, are not well drilled, and cannot be taken from the country.

Committee men—There were a great many committees at this time; the one referred to here belonged to New York, and their duty was to look after the interests of the country, and to take measures to secure its liberty.

General Wayne—a somewhat prominent general of the Americans.

Stony Point—a place on the Hudson river not far from West Point.

West Point—on the right bank of the Hudson, about fifty miles above New York city. The U. S. military school is situated there.

Arnold—Benedict Arnold was a very prominent general in the American army till 1778. In 1775 he invaded Canada in hopes to surprise Quebec. He was engaged in several other enterprises, and by his bravery materially helped to gain the battle of Saratoga, though he had no command in the army. It is said his extravagant way of living and his gambling caused him to fall into disgrace with Washington; this and the influence of a loyalist wife induced him to form a plot to surrender West Point to the English. The plot was discovered; Arnold escaped to New York and joined the English army. He died in England.

Irons upon his wrists—handcuffs or *manacles*; "fetters" are properly for the ankles.

Washington—George Washington, one of the great and good men of the world, was born in Virginia, February 22, 1732. In 1754 he led a force against the French fort where Pittsburg now is, and next year was with Braddock's unfortunate expedition against the same place, doing good service to the beaten army. He was active during the rest of the Seven Years' (or Colonial) War. When the trouble with England arose, to his utter surprise he was named commander-in chief of the American forces, but he set vigorously to work training his army. His first success was in compelling the English in the spring of 1776 to leave Boston; but next year disaster after disaster overtook him; driven from New York, defeated again and again, chased through New Jersey into Delaware,—he never gave up, but cheered his men to ne[illegible] exertion. The tide turned at last; [illegible]s defeat of the English at Trenton and Princeton gave new hope; and when, in 1781, he forced Lord Cornwallis to surrender at Yorktown the war was done. When peace was concluded he tried his best to bring about a good feeling with England again. He was ever laboring for his country's good. He was twice elected President of the United States. He died on December 14, 1799.

Capital offence—an offence the punishment of which is death.

Provost—prov-ust or prō-vō;—a military officer who has charge of prisoners and who has to see that punishment is carried out.

André—A gallant young English officer who carried on the negotiations with Arnold for the surrender of West Point. He was captured by the Americans and hung as a spy at Tarrytown near West Point. He was highly esteemed by both friends and foes.

Haverstraw mountains—an offshoot of the Catskill.

Precipice—*See* note under "Taking of Gibraltar."

Count Rochambeau—rōsh-am-bō. He was a marshal of France, and distinguished himself in the wars on the continent. In 1780 he was sent to Amer-

ica with an army to help the revolted colonies, and was with Washington at the capture of Lord Cornwallis in 1781. In 1791 he was made commander of the French army, but was soon replaced; he then retired to his estates. He came near being put to death by the revolutionists. Napoleon granted him a pension. He died in 1807.

Weymouth—in Digby county.

JACK FROST.

Coat of mail—Boys who skate will not need to be told what this "coat of mail" is; and they have seen the glittering "spears" hanging down from the rocks, and from the eaves of houses.

Fairy—As fairies were very delicate little creatures, any fine, delicate work is called "fairy-like." We have all seen the delicate pictures the frost makes on the window-panes.

Silver sheen- bright silver.

Tchick—the sound of the breaking glass.

PITCHER PLANTS.

Abyss—a bottomless gulf;—not quite true here, except in the poor insect's thoughts.

Carnivorous — Latin "caro" (carnis), flesh, and "voro," to eat;—flesh-eating, as the lion, tiger, etc.; *herbivorous*, plant eating, as cattle, sheep, horses; *omnivorous*, eating flesh or plants, as man.

Sarrazin—sar-rah-zá(n).

Tournefort--toorn-fóre.

Purpurea—per-péw-re-a.

Flava—flá-va.

Heliamphera- Hē-lē-ám-fer-a.

Nepenthes—Ne-pén-theez.

Three inches . . long- "Broad" is here an adjective, qualifying "leaves"; "inches" may be parsed as a noun, used adverbially, modifying "broad," though its real construction would be after "of" understood; "long," etc., is to be parsed the same way, as all like combinations must be.

Tortuous—twisted.

Pendulous—hanging.

Tendrils — little vines on plants that clasp round something else for support.

Secretion — something separated from the blood of animals, or the sap of plants; the "glands" are the organs that produce the secretion. Saliva, or spittle, is a secretion; the glands that produce it are in the cheeks.

Monkey—literally, *a little man.*

Chatsworth—This is the magnificent private residence of the Duke of Devonshire; it is in Derbyshire.

Cephalotus—séf-a-lō-tus.

MOOSE HUNTING IN NOVA SCOTIA.

Moose—otherwise called the elk; a large animal of the deer kind, having heavy, broad horns, or antlers. Give the plural of "moose." Mention other species of deer.

No difference in color- If the bite had been made any length of time before, the color of the bitten spot would have been brown instead of greenish white.

Joe—Pupils must not expect Joe to speak very good English.

Indian file—That is, one after another. "File" means literally a thread, Latin *filum;* so we say, 'put a paper *on file,*' —put a string through it, as it were, and hang it up to be preserved.

Observation of the wind -The hunters did not wish to get in such a position that the wind would blow from them towards the moose; if they did so the moose would scent them and run away.

Barren—a place where no trees or grass grow, merely a few low shrubs.

HISTORICAL SKETCH OF PRINCE EDWARD ISLAND.

John Cabot—Cabōt was a Venetian navigator, who, for convenience of trade, had been living for some time in Bristol, when in 1496 he was appointed by Henry VII. to go on a voyage of discovery across the Atlantic. In June, 1497, he sighted Labrador, and after sailing along the coast he returned to England. In 1499 he explored the whole coast down to the Gulf of Mexico. **After**

this year no more is heard of John Cabot. John's son, Sebastian, born at Bristol in 1477, is the most celebrated; he went with his father on his voyages. In 1512 he entered the service of Ferdinand of Spain, but returned to England in 1517 on the death of that king. In 1517 Henry VIII. sent him to Labrador to search for a passage across to China; he entered Hudson Bay; but the expedition was a failure. We next find Sebastian in the service of Charles V. of Germany (and Spain), who sent him on a voyage of discovery down the east coast of South America. In 1548 he came back to England, and Edward VI. gave him a pension and made him inspector of the navy. It is uncertain when he died.

Cortereal—For this navigator, and for Verazzani, Cartier and Champlain, *see* notes under "Founding of N. A. Colonies."

Fishing grounds, etc.—Herrings are abundant, especially at the Magdalen Islands and on the Labrador coast; salmon, in the Bay Chaleur.

St. John—St. John the Baptist's day is June 24th.

Sieur Doublet—see-ûr doo-blāy.

Employés—This word is now generally written "employee"; it is a French word, meaning the person hired by an *employer*. Other words of this kind are protegee (French protégé), patentee, lessee, grantee—all used in a passive sense, having something bestowed on them by another.

French had been deprived—by the treaty of Utrecht in 1713, closing the "War of the Spanish Succession."

Newfoundland—*See* the note on this word under "Founding of the N. A. Colonies" and under "Voyage of the Golden Hind."

Acadians—*See* the note on "Acadia," under "Founding of the N. A. Colonies."

Immigration—People who enter a country to live there are called immigrants, from the Latin *in*, into, *migro*, to wander; when they *go from* a country they are called *emigrants*, from the Latin *e*, out, and *migro*.

1745 . . year of war—This war is known in Europe as the "War of the Austrian Succession," in which England sided with Austria; France joined the enemies of Austria in 1744. During this war Charles Stuart invaded England; on the continent, the battles of Dettingen and Fontenoy were the chief ones in which the English were engaged. The war ended in 1748. *See* History of England.

Militia—*See* note on this word under U. E. Loyalists."

Another war—This war is called in Europe "The Seven Years' War." *See* the History of Canada.

Capitulation—a surrender, or giving up, upon certain conditions; when no conditions are made, it is called an "unconditional surrender."

Fate of the Acadians—The Acadians, who were French, did not like to be ruled over by the English, and so gave the English a great deal of trouble after the latter had obtained Nova Scotia. They were accused of urging the Indians to attack the English settlers, and of committing many other crimes. At last the English governor ordered them all to assemble in their churches on a certain day, under pretence of hearing a new law read; but they were made prisoners, and taken away out of Nova Scotia and landed in the other colonies;—this was the case more especially in Kings and Annapolis counties. A great deal of misery thus fell on the poor people; but those who were left gave no further trouble. The poet Longfellow has written about this expulsion of the Acadians in his beautiful poem "Evangeline."

American Revolution—*See* History of England.

Store-ships—vessels loaded with provisions, etc.

Washington—*See* note under "U. E. Loyalists."

Far from being pleased—The object of "from" in this phrase is "being pleased."

Make a descent—that is, to attack.

Fondly—This word here means "foolishly,"—the old meaning; the usual signification now is "lovingly"

Attached—Explain what is meant.

Duke of Kent—a son of George III.

A name common—*See* note under "Voyage of the Golden Hind."

NOTE.—Prince Edward Island joined the Dominion in 1873. *See* Campbell's Geography, last edition.

SHIP BUILDING IN NEW BRUNSWICK.

Characteristic feature—that character which belongs especially to a person or thing, distinguishing it from others.

Coal fields — *See* note on this under "Coal Fields of Nova Scotia."

Newfoundland—*See* note on this under "Founding of N. A. Colonies."

No mean . . markets — The author means that the Canadas can compete with other large countries in producing timber and grain.

Plantations—This is a wrong use of "plantation"; "forests" is a better word. *See* note under "Founding of the N. A. Colonies."

As it were—"Were" is here in the subjunctive mood, as it expresses a kind of supposition. What does "it" mean here?

Raw material—That is, anything in its natural state before being manufactured; timber is here meant. The use of this expression is bad here,—it is almost like slang.

St. John -*See* note under "Voyage of the Golden Hind."

Miramichi—meer-a-me-sheé.

Bay of Fundy—*See* note under "Coal Fields of Nova Scotia."

Gulf of St. Lawrence—*See* note on this under "Founding of N. A. Colonies."

Coasting trade—That is, trade with the ports along the coast,—not crossing the ocean or any large body of water.

Neighboring—*See* note under "Parting with the Esquimaux."

Marco Polo—This was a ship built by James Smith, of St. John, N. B., in 1851; 184 feet long, 41 feet 9 inches broad, and measuring 1625 tons. It was her great speed that made her so celebrated. After surprising everybody by her quick passages across the Atlantic, she was sold to a firm in Liverpool, and was fitted out for Australia; she made the round trip in 5 months and 21 days, which was most extraordinary, the distance from Liverpool to Melbourne being 12,700 miles. The Marco Polo is still running (1878). The name "Marco Polo" is that of a celebrated Venetian traveller of the 13th century, who went to the court of the Tartar emperor in Asia and remained there 17 years. After his return to Venice he was taken prisoner in war, and while in confinement wrote the story of his travels.

Lloyd's—This is a set of rooms at the Royal Exchange in London, in which a record is kept of all the British vessels, their class, state, value, etc., and where the arrival of all vessels is announced, and what disasters have befallen any. There are agents in every port of importance, who send to these rooms an account of everything relating to shipping in the place where they are. Underwriters, ship-owners, and all interested in vessels frequent these rooms, where business is transacted to an enormous amount. The name arose from a coffee-house kept by a man named Lloyd, to which underwriters, etc., resorted.

Underwriting—That is, insuring; because the insurer wrote his name *at the end* of the paper (or *policy*) given to the owner of the property as a proof of insurance. The term is now chiefly used in insuring vessels.

That their vessels, etc.—This clause is adverbial to "high," or rather in apposition with "so."

White barked—*See* "Hiawatha's Sailing."

Woods are made use of—*See* note on "It was taken possession of" under the "Buccaneers," and compare with the same expression in the note under "Founding of the N. A. Colonies."

Tons—*See* note on "Ten-ton cutter" under "Voyage of the Golden Hind."

Sir H. Gilbert—*See* "Voyage of the Golden Hind" and the note on Gilbert.

Pigmy—also spelled "pygmy";—a being the *size of the fist*—from the elbow to the knuckles. The old Greeks used to believe that there was a nation of pigmies living near the mouth of the Nile, or somewhere else, who were always at war with the cranes, the latter being victorious. The word now means anything very small of its kind.

Ancestor . . progeny — The meaning is, that this little vessel was the first one; and after it there have come very many more, and very large ones.

Craft— trade, occupation; it sometimes means "vessels."

Monneguash—mon-ne-gwâsh.

Revenue—literally, "a coming back"; the money that the government obtains from various sources.

Anticipate—This word means here "expect"; sometimes it means "to be beforehand with."

Marine—the whole number of vessels. This word is here a noun; it is usually an adjective.

That of the mother country—Canada has a marine now inferior only to those of Great Britain, the United States, and France; some say inferior to the first two only.

THE SHIP BUILDERS.

John Greenleaf Whittier, one of the greatest of American poets, was born in Massachusetts in the year 1807. After working on the farm and at shoemaking till he was eighteen, he went to a school of the Friends, or Quakers, and in 1829 went to Boston as editor of the *American Manufacturer*, and next year he became editor of the *New England Weekly Review;* in 1832 he returned to his native town, Haverhill, taking charge of the *Haverhill Gazette*. He was a member of the Massachusetts Legislature for two years. In 1836 he became a secretary of the American Anti-Slavery Society, and from that time took an active part, both by writing and speaking, in the effort to overthrow slavery, living in Philadelphia and editing the *Pennsylvania Freeman*. Since 1840 he has lived in Massachusetts. Mr. Whittier has written a great deal; perhaps the best known of his poems is "Maud Muller"; others are "Mogg Megone," "Songs of Labor," "Home Ballads," "Snow Bound," "National Lyrics," "Child Life," etc.

Broad axe — These words should be joined by a hyphen. The construction is, 'Let the broad-axe be' (or go), etc.

Are fading . . stars—It is early morning, daybreak, and the sparks shine in the dim light; as the sun approaches, the stars and sparks disappear.

Scourge—Pupils must be careful not to pronounce this word "skorj"; "skurj" is the proper pronunciation: Mr. Whittier makes it rhyme with "forge," which is not right.

Island barges —the rafts of timber, like floating islands

Century-circled—The rings that are seen on cutting across the stem of a tree mark its age. The wood that a tree makes during a summer's growth is deposited all around the tree, between the bark and the wood of the preceding year; the ring thus formed is always plainly to be seen. By "century-circled" the poet does not literally mean a hundred years old; he merely intends to say that the trees were very old,—perhaps many centuries.

For us—refers to the ship-builders; it is they who are supposed to be speaking.

We make . . human art—The poet principally refers to the *giant power* of the wind, which moves the vessel that is made by human art.

Tree-nails —long wooden *pins* or *bolts* for fastening the planks on the sides of vessels. Ship-carpenters pronounce this word "trŭn-nels."

Searching sea — because the sea will search, as it were, for the smallest crack to enter by.

Caught below—In storms vessels will often heel, or lean, over so much that the end of the lower yard dips in the water.

Vulture-beak —The sharp icebergs are here compared to the beak of the vulture—a bird of prey with a powerful beak.

Coral—The coral reefs are very dangerous to navigation, as they grow until they get within a few feet of the top of the water. *See* "coral" under "The Veteran Tar"

Shell—How is a vessel a shell?

Citadel—protection; literally, a strong fort. "Citadel" is the predicate nominative of "float," as "grave" is of "sink."

Grooves— Greased timbers are placed firmly beneath the vessel, and when the props (or shores) are knocked away the vessel slides on these timbers down into the water; "ways" is the proper name, not "grooves."

Aside—beside, near.

Frozen Hebrides—Is this correct?

Silken chain, etc.—Commerce is called here a silken chain, uniting the nations of the world together. Trade is a peaceful occupation producing kindly or pleasant feelings among nations, as silk is pleasant to the touch. War and conquest might be said to unite nations by an *iron* chain.

Groaning cargo—a cargo of slaves from Africa. These slaves were packed into the hold of the vessel close together, and seldom if ever allowed to come on deck.

Lethean drug — Pronounce *lee-thé-an*. Opium is meant. Lethe (lee-thee), in the belief of the old Greeks, was a river surrounding the abode of the departed spirits; each spirit on crossing the river had to drink some of its water, which caused forgetfulness of everything in the former life on earth. Opium produces stupor and forgetfulness in the person who has used it, and is even worse than intoxicating liquors in its effects on the system. The English of Hindostán, where great quantities of opium are raised, sent it to China (hence the poet's words "for Eastern Lands"), and when the Chinese wished to put a stop to the trade England declared war, in 1840, and forced them to cede Hong Kong, pay a large sum of money, and permit the trade in opium.

Poison-draught—Intoxicating liquors, brought from Europe, etc., to America; though the worst kinds are made in the United States. This word, and "fruits" and "drug" are objects of "bear," understood.

Honest fruits—all sorts of manufactures and productions of the earth.

Be hers—"Be" is in the subjunctive mood, expressing a wish.

Prairie's golden grain—Does not "golden grain" grow elsewhere than on the prairies?

Golden sand—Gold is generally found in barren, desert places; in the beds of rivers or in the soil, it is in grains like sand.

Clustered fruits—Spain is the land of *raisins.*

Morning land—The eastern countries. Spice comes from the east. Name the chief spices, and where they come from. *See* in the Geography under Ceylon, Sumatra, and other islands in the Indian Ocean.

NOTE.—In the eighth stanza, fifth line, the last word is "main."

FIRE IN THE WOODS.

Norman Macleod (mac-loud), a celebrated minister of the Church of Scotland, was born at Campbeltown, Argyleshire, on June 3, 1812. After passing through the University of Glasgow, he went to Edinburgh and studied theology under the celebrated Dr. Chalmers, whose enthusiastic and loving nature exerted a great influence over the young student. After a stay on the continent, he returned to Scotland and entered on his first charge at Loudoun. In 1845 he paid a visit to America. In 1851 he became minister of the Barony parish in Glasgow, and remained there till his death in 1872. He was a very kind-hearted man, sympathizing deeply with all forms of distress, doing his utmost to raise the miserable, and to make people better. He loved every really Christian man, no matter to what denomination he belonged, and he looked with pity and even contempt upon the man who thought there was no good outside his own church or creed. All his writings teach the lesson of gentleness, charity, good-will towards others; tyranny and bigotry he could not endure. He frequently preached before the Queen, and was often invited to her palace, where he was a guest honored and loved by all. He was editor for some time of "Good Words," in which magazine many of his writings first appeared. "The Starling," "The Old Lieutenant and his Son," "Peeps at the Far East" (an account of his journey to India), "The Earnest Student," are some of his chief works.

Corduroy—Roads over swampy places are often formed by laying poles or logs close alongside of each other; this is called "corduroy road."

Ramparted—fortified.

To be sure—This is a mere interjectional phrase.

Think only if—The object of "think" is to be supplied by some object clause such as, 'what would have been our fate.'

To the memorable—Supply "compared" before "to."

As was supposed—Supply "it" before "was,"—the antecedent being the sentence preceding.

Refugee—*See* "employee" under "Historical Sketch of P. E. I."

St. John's—*See* note under "Voyage of the Golden Hind."

Newfoundland—*See* note under "Founding of the N. A. Colonies."

Bermudas—*See* note under "Song of the Emigrants in Bermuda."

Scourged—The writer means 'covered with weeds, etc., that injure the soil, and prevent useful things from growing. *See* note under "The Ship-builders."

AUTUMN WOODS.

Bryant—*See* the sketch of Bryant, and the "Note" under "The Prairie."

Their glory—the many-colored leaves.

Wide sweep—What is meant?

The sun . . here—The poet probably means that the sun makes the place warm, and the cooler air from elsewhere rushes in, thus creating a wind; hence the sun may be said to "send the gales"

'Twere a lot—Here "it" stands for the rest of the poem. Is "were" plural," or is it the subjunctive mood?

And leave—Supply "to" before "leave."

THE LAZARETTO AT TRACADIE.

The Hon. Sir Arthur Hamilton Gordon, youngest son of the Earl of Ab rdeen, was born in 1829; he entered Parliament in 1854. In 1861 he was appointed Governor of New Brunswick for five years; since then he has been Governor of Trinidad and of Mauritius. When the Fiji Islands were made a British possession, Sir Arthur was created their first Governor and commander-in-chief, in 1875.

Lazaretto—A hospital, especially for those who have contagious diseases. The word is said to be derived from "Lazarus." *See* Luke xvi. 20.

Levant—That part of the Mediterranean that washes the southern portion of Asia Minor and the western portion of Syria. The word itself means "rising," —possibly because the sun rises in the east,—the Levant being the eastern part of the Mediterranean.

Leprosy—This disease is said to be incurable; it is very often referred to in the Bible.

Elephantiasis, etc. — ei-e-fan-tī-a-sis gree-cō-rum;—this disease is so called because it makes the skin thick and unfeeling.

Tracadie—*See* note on "Acadia" under "Founding of the N. A. Colonies"; there is another Tracadie in Antigonish county, N. S.

Skew—turned aside, slanting, askew; a skew window would not go straight through a wall, but in a slanting direction.

Chancel—*See* Chambers' Dictionary.

Mediæval—from the Latin "medius," middle, and "ævum," age. The "middle ages," in the language of history, began about A.D. 800 and ended about A.D. 1500; some historians put the beginning about A.D. 400.

Gothic—This style of architecture, in which the arches are pointed, not rounded, received its name, not because it was the one employed by the Goths, but because when first introduced it was thought to be a rude style, in very bad taste, quite different from the Greek or Roman one; hence the name "Gothic" was given to it, signifying *barbarous*, or a style suited to such a barbarous people as the Goths.

Dotage—second childhood;—when old men become feeble in mind and body, and have to be taken care of like young children.

LEFT ASHORE ON ANTICOSTI.

Charles Lever, the celebrated Irish novelist, was born in Dublin in 1806, and for a time was a physician; but after the success of his first book, "Harry Lorrequer," he devoted himself to literature. He wrote many novels whose free, brilliant style we never get weary of. His best known works are "Charles O'Malley" and "Jack Hinton." His early works are full of fun, activity, and merriment; his later ones, such as "Tom Burke" and "Davenport Dunn," are much more thoughtful in tone. He died in 1872.

Gulf of St. Lawrence—*See* note under "Founding of the N. A. Colonies."

It shoals—That is, 'the water did not get deep for some distance from the shore.'

Shingly stones—A "shingle" is an extent of barren, stone-covered land.

Nor' west and by west — "Northwest" points exactly half way between north and west; "west-north-west," half way between north-west and west; "north-west and by west" (or north-west-by-west), half way between this and north-west, or one point nearer west than north.

Cardinal points—chief points. North, East, South, West.

Maize—Indian corn; in England, wheat, rye, etc., are called "corn."

Of which I saw—"Of which" is adjective to "ones."

Contemptuous indifference—as if the rats despised the man, it not making any difference to them whether he was there or not.

Campaign—here an attack on the rats. A campaign is the time during a year in which an army carries on its operations.

As to any personal—Some words have to be supplied before this expression; as 'if you say anything,' etc.

Grenade—a small, hollow ball of iron or glass filled with powder and small pieces of iron, lead, etc., and thrown from the hand; before being thrown, a little fuse that communicated with the powder, was lighted by the soldier.

They are not now employed in warfare. The soldiers using grenades were called "grenadiers"; but this name now means tall foot-soldiers, who are placed on the right of their company and lead in an attack.

To make . . moment came—This is all explanatory of "method."

Election row—Though we often have disturbances at elections now, they were far worse in Lever's days.

Backed her topsail—The topsail (tŏp-sl) is the *second* sail above the deck, not the top one of all; to "back" a sail is to arrange it so as to make the vessel sail backwards; or, as here, to check her speed.

Pinnace—*See* the note on this word under "Jacques Cartier at Hochelaga."

Coxwain—the officer (swain) who has charge of a *boat* and its crew.

Yacht—(yot); a pleasure boat having one or two masts; some are of a very small size, others very large, measuring over a hundred tons. Some yachts, especially those employed by sovereigns for purposes of state, are driven by steam.

Transport—a vessel for carrying soldiers from one place to another.

LABRADOR AND OTHER TEAS.

Cup that, etc.—This is a quotation from "The Task—Winter Evening," a poem by Cowper; the quotation is not quite correct, it should be,

> . . . . "cups that cheer
> But not inebriate." . . .

Wintergreen—often called "checker-berry."

Terminal clusters—clusters growing on the *ends* of the stalks, not along the sides.

Lord Milton—an English nobleman, who with Dr. Cheedle travelled extensively over British America, visiting Labrador, British Columbia, the North-West Territory, etc.

Unthrifty—wasteful, not economical.

Affected—This word means here "liked" or "loved"; it has another meaning—feigned, put on, not real; as 'affected manners'—manners that are not natural to the person, but merely put on.

Spinsters—unmarried women;—the word literally means a "female spinner"; because in the England of olden times one of the principal duties of unmarried women was spinning.

Dash—a very slight quantity.

Throw overboard—*See* History of England, reign of Geo. III., 1774.

Speculator—one who buys goods of any kind in the hope of a rise in the price, so as to make a good profit by selling them; or with the object of sending them to a distance in which considerable risk is incurred.

Are made use of—*See* the note on "It was taken possession of" under the "Buccaneers."

Holly—a plant bearing bright red berries, and whose leaves are green through the winter; a famous Christmas decoration in England.

Species—This is a Latin word, having the same form for both singular and plural. Name others of the same kind.

Genus—the plural of this word is "genera";—a "genus" may contain several "species."

STORY OF WAPWIAN.

Trappers—those who catch animals in traps or snares.

Portages—*See* the note under "Mountaineer in Newfoundland."

Capôte—a blanket (or cloak) and hood combined.

Fire-bag—probably the bag containing what was necessary to produce fire with.

Advances—efforts to become friends.

Tobacco—This is very largely employed as a present to gain the good will of the Indians.

The more so—"The" *(by this)* is an adverb, modifying "more"; "more" and "so" are adverbs, modifying "did" understood,—'we did so *(in this manner*—that is, accepted the invitation, etc.), more by this,' etc.

Precipice—*See* note under "Taking of Gibraltar."

Neighboring—*See* the note on this word under "Parting with the Esquimaux."

Rivulet—At the end of words "let" usually means "small"—rivulet, a small *river.*

Ushered—introduced, accompanied or led into. An usher is an officer in great households who has charge of the doors and who introduces strangers to the lord. It also means an inferior officer in courts of law. It is the same word as *issue, issuer.*

Venison—venz-n;—the flesh of animals taken in *hunting,* but usually applied to deer's flesh only.

Untimely—too early, not in the proper time.

NOTE.—Most boys have read some of Mr. Ballantyne's books; he has written a great many, all full of interesting adventure and useful information.

THE MAPLE.

Changeful dress—What is meant? *See* "crimson glories" in verse three.

A type—a resemblance, sign, emblem; the maple leaf is the emblem of Canada, as the rose is of England, the thistle of Scotland, and the clover (shamrock) leaf of Ireland. *See* "type" below.

Screen—a verb.

Like the dawn . . pine—The log-hut is not an inviting, pleasant looking home; but the settler works on, looking forward to the time when he shall have a better one.

Downs—low hills; another form of the word is "dune."

O'er the streets—How so?

Gladdens . . eye-ball—The beautiful green refreshes the eye that has seen only the hot brick and mortar all day long.

Type—The poet says the maple is the type of Canada: its light green leaves represent the bright future to the settler; the sap, the plenty that Canada gives to the man willing to work; the buds, promise, hope, liberty; and the red leaves, the blood that Canadians would shed if an enemy invaded their country. It is just a little difficult to see all this as clearly as the poet seems to do.

All hail—This is an expression of hearty greeting, used in poetry, however, more than in common life. "Hail" is the same word as "health"; and *all hail* really conveys the wish that *all health* may attend the person saluted.

DEATH OF MONTCALM.

A death—Wolfe's. *See* History of Canada.

This war—It began in 1754. Read carefully about this war in the History of Canada.

Fort William Henry—stood at the south-west corner of Lake George; Fort Ticonderoga, on the south-west side of Lake Champlain, where Lake George flows into it.

Quebec—this name is said to be an Indian word—Kepec—meaning "strait."

Lines—fortifications.

Cathedral—the chief church of a diocese;—the bishop's church, or *seat*, as the word means.

Marquis de Vaudreuil—pronounce—*mar-kee*, ("mar" as in "marry")—*de-vo-dre-ee* (the 'e' in *de* and *dre* the same as "u" in *dust.*)

Come to burn—to burn, to look, to return, are infinitives showing the purpose; hence they are adverbial.

Scalp—The Indians always scalp their slain enemies; that is, tear off the hair from the top of the head, with the skin attached.

Break up the camp—leave it.

Bridge of boats—made by fastening boats side by side and laying planks across them. The bridge here referred to was across the St Charles, leading to the French camp.

Only gun—The banks were so steep that the English could drag only one cannon up them.

Broadswords—This was the old "claymore" of the Highlanders. The Highlanders in the British army do not now use the broadsword; they are armed with rifle and bayonet like the other soldiers.

Supported—helped.

Having thrown—Parse this.

Troops of the line—the *regular* soldiers, not the French Canadians or volunteers.

Ramparts—the fortified walls of the city.

Martello tower—These were small round towers built of stone; they were generally built near the coast, to protect it from invasion.

So much the better—"the" is here an adverb;—the meaning is 'so much better *by this.*'

Then I shall—"*then*" is not an adverb of time here; compare with "then" a couple of lines before.

Lieutenant du roi—lieutenant of the king.

Roussillon—*roos-see-yon.*

Cape Rouge—red cape, five or six miles above Quebec. There is another cape of this name, many miles below Quebec.

For myself—Parse *for;* words have to be supplied.

Moment—weight, importance.

Perplexities—from Latin, *per*—completely; *plecto*—interweave: difficulties that are like a tangled string, all inter woven.

Magnanimous—great-souled, noble.

As I commanded—Parse "as;" is it the object of commanded?

Engage—promise, undertake.

Ursuline—an order of nuns named after St. Ursula, a native of Naples.

LINES ON THE DEATH OF WOLFE.

Oliver Goldsmith, son of the Rev. Charles Goldsmith, was born in 1728 at Pallas in the county of Longford, Ireland. After taking his degree at the University of Dublin, he studied medicine at Edinburgh for a year or so, and then went to Leyden in Holland; from this city he set off on foot for a tour in Europe with one guinea in his pocket and owning but one suit of clothes. He was gone two years, and in 1756 came back to England penniless. Then we find him teaching in a school, a druggist, a doctor, a writer for papers,—all the time wretchedly poor, but with a heart full of kindness and hope. At last his writings made him famous; friends increased; but his exceeding wastefulness kept him always poor. He wrote the "Citizen of the World"—a collection of essays; "The Traveller," "The Deserted Village," "Vicar of Wakefield," and some plays. He died in 1774. No man ever had a kinder heart than Goldsmith; he gave everything he had, even to his bed-clothes, to relieve misery; the sight he loved most was "a happy human face," and he did his best to make it happy. He loved the world, strove with all his might to make it better, and now the world loves him.

Wolfe—James Wolfe, the son of Lieutenant-General Wolfe, was born at Westerham, in Kent, in 1726. He entered the army at an early age, and distinguished himself by his bravery and military ability during the war on the continent. When Pitt came into power in 1757, he selected Wolfe as one of the men fit to carry out his great plan of taking Canada from the French. The rest of his story is told in the History of Canada.

Conquest dear—Goldsmith says that the possession of Canada was not worth the price paid for it,—the death of Wolfe; and that grief at his loss prevented all joy for the capture of Quebec.

Alive—Supply 'when thou wast.'

Conquerest . . rise—That is, Wolfe's example of bravery and skill will stir up thousands to do as he did, and so he will be said to conquer still, though dead.

THE RIVER ST. LAWRENCE.

St. Lawrence—*See* the note under "Founding of the N. A. Colonies."

Cartier—car-t'-yā. *See* History of Canada.

Noble river—How "noble"?

Unique—you-néek:—having no resemblance to anything else,—being the only one of its kind.

Solid grounds—The only "*solid* grounds" possible would be an accurate survey of all the fresh water lakes in the world.

Basin—The "basin" of a river is all the country whose waters are carried off by that river.

Lake Superior—Pupils must look up in their geographies all about the lakes and other geographical names, mentioned in the text.

Fifty rivers—These are very small; name some.

Falls of St. Mary—better known by the name of "Sault St. Marie,"—sō san(t) mar-é; French Canadians say "soo" instead of "sō."

Phenomenon—Give the plural, and name other words of the same kind.

Detroit—This is a French word, meaning "strait."

Rapid—a place where the bed of a river becomes suddenly steep so that the water runs very fast.

Excavated . . ages—*See* the note under "The Falls of Niagara" by Brainerd.

Thousand Isles—It is said that these islands number many more than a thousand.

For the most part—Something must be supplied before "for,"—as, 'if we speak,' or some such; the phrase may possibly be adjectival to "these."

Primeval—In the earliest state,—belonging to the earliest age of the world; Latin *primus*, first, and *ævum*, age.

Fairy—*See* the note under "Jack Frost."

Fantastic intricacy—"Intricacy" means the state of being intricate—difficult to follow out or trace; "fantastic" means odd, singularly formed,—made by mere fancy without any definite reason. An intricate path is one that is difficult to follow, which, on account of hindrances, turnings, etc., is apt to be lost; it would be *fantastically* intricate if its hindrances, turnings and interweavings were put there from mere fancy, to look odd—"just for the fun of it."

Hurrying on—qualifies "it," three lines below.

Timber rafts—Tell where, in general, these come from, and where they are going, and what kind of timber they consist of.

Tremendous rapids—The chief rapids are the Galops (gah-lōo) just below Prescott, Long Sault (*see* note above) above Cornwall, Coteau (cō-tó), Cedars, Cascades nearer Montreal, Lachine (lah-shéen) at Montreal.

Ship canals—The Junction canal overcomes the Galops rapids; the Cornwall canal, the Long Sault; the Beauharnois (bo-har-nwăh) canal, the Coteau, Cedars and Cascades; the Lachine canal, the Lachine. These are the principal canals; there are some others, as the Farrens Point, and Rapide Plat canals, between the Cornwall and the Junction canals, but they are short.

Emporium—the centre of trade, the *market*, etc.

Champlain—(sham-plane).

Crested Crags—the crags, or lofty, rugged rocks, are surmounted by a *crest*, the woods, or perhaps the fortifications.

Ships of the line—men-of-war. Ocean steamers and ocean ships come up to Montreal now, since the channel has been dug deeper through lake St. Peter, etc.

Stupendous—so great as to make one *stupid*—dumb with astonishment; "tremendous"—so great as to make one *tremble;* "terrific"—*making*, or producing *terror;* "fearful," producing *fear*. The last two do not refer to size in the object; the first two imply great size.

But three—"But" is an adverb.

Hostile fleets—*See* History of Canada, —War of 1812.

Rivalling in power—Compare the population of the United States with that of European countries.

Independent nation—*See* the History of England—reign of Geo. III.,—also the "United Empire Loyalists."

Populous cities—Name them, on both sides of the river.

Occasional obstacles—What are they?

Internal communication—ways or means of going from one part of a country to another within itself, as opposed to the ways of reaching the country from the outside. The ocean, and the railways, etc., of the United States enable people to reach Canada; these may be called means of *external* communication; our own railways, rivers, lakes, canals, etc., enable us to get from one part of Canada to another,—*internal* communication.

Emigrants—those who leave a country to live elsewhere; they are called "immigrants" in the country where they settle.

Mississippi—Look up in the Geography all about this river.

Unalterable in their level—The word "their" should be "its," the antecedent being "former," that is, the St. Lawrence. The Mississippi has a vast basin, and all the surplus water runs directly into it to be carried to the sea; the country through which this river runs is flat, and when in the spring there is a great quantity of surplus water, the river cannot contain it all within its low banks, and so some must run over. With the St. Lawrence it is quite different; in the spring the great lakes have to be all filled up first, and from these, like great reservoirs, the water runs leisurely into the river, and so there is no possibility of any great rise in the water. If we could place our great lakes along the Mississippi from Minnesota to Tennessee there would be no floods in that river, and we would have them in the St Lawrence.

Limpid waters—The water of the St. Lawrence is clear because during its course through the great lakes it moves very slowly, and the mud gradually settles to the bottom; so that by the time it gets through lake Ontario there is very little impurity left. The Mississippi, on the contrary, has no still water in which the mud may settle, but mud and water are hurried on together. It may be inferred from the above that our great lakes are filling up—which is probably the case.

Magnificently beautiful—*Magnificence* and *grandeur* both imply large size in the object; the former arouses in us an *excited* feeling, making us burst out with a cry of pleasure; the latter does not excite us, it makes us quiet, but we feel even more deeply, and are sensible of a pleasing kind of fear or awe; if we speak at all it is merely to say, in a low tone, "that is grand"!

Moral keeping—"Moral" here means belonging to the manners and customs —to the thoughts and actions; "keeping" signifies a likeness, resemblance, etc. The sentence means that, as the physical appearance,—that is, the form, shape, look—of the Mississippi is different from (in contrast with) that of the St. Lawrence; so the manners, customs, thoughts, etc., of the people are different;—the St. Lawrence is bright and free,—the Mississippi is gloomy, not cheerful, and slaves were found along its course.

Slave-master—There are no slaves now in the United States. On January 1, 1863, President Lincoln declared them all free.

On British ground—No runaway slave who reached Canada could be taken back again to slavery.

Glimmers—Is this word correctly used here?

Antique—an-téek—old-fashioned.

Quaint— strange, odd-looking.

Planting the cross—that is, establishing Christianity,—the cross being the sign or emblem of Christianity.

Trials—troubles.

Martyrdom—A martyr for Christianity is one who endures every kind of suffering, even death for its sake. There may be also martyrs for any other cause, such as science, or liberty.

Wolfe and Montcalm—*See* History of Canada; also "Death of Montcalm"; for "Wolfe"—*see* under "Lines on the Death of Wolfe."

Montgomery—was an Irish officer who had been with Wolfe at Quebec; he took part with the revolted colonists and was sent to assist Arnold to capture Quebec. He was defeated and slain.

Halo—Literally, a halo is the circle often seen around the sun or moon before a storm, caused by the light falling upon the mist or fine snow in the upper air. In painting, a halo is a circle that artists often put around the head of saints, etc., as a sign of holiness, and to distinguish them from others. The meaning in the extract is, that when we see the St. Lawrence we think of the deeds of these brave men; and thus their memory may be said to surround the river as the circle of light does the sun or moon.

JACQUES CARTIER AT HOCHELAGA.

Cartier—*See* note on "Founding of N. A. Colonies." Read carefully about Cartier in the History of Canada.

Hochelaga— *hosh-lah-gah.*

Pinnace—usually an eight oared boat that can be used with sails also. Cartier's pinnace would now be called a good-sized yacht.

Hermerillon—*hare-mare-ee-yo(n)*

Long-boat—the longest boat in a ship.

St. Croix--pronounce, *sa(n)-crwa*—("wa" as in "walk"). Now called St. Charles.

Hochelai—*hosh-lah-ee.*

Richelieu—*reesh-l'-yu*—("u" as in "but"). *See* map.

Wintering of the French—They suffered much from cold, hunger, and sickness; 25 of the French died.

Shallowness of the water—Ocean steamers, and ships come up to Montreal now, because a channel has been dredged (or scooped out) through Lake St. Peter.

Friendly—an adverb here. Why do we not say *friendlily?*

Of long time—What would we say now?

In full dress—dressed in their uniforms.

Metropolis—literally the *mother city*—the city, among the old Greeks, from which colonists set out. It now merely means the largest city in any district or country.

Palisades—a sort of fortification made by driving stout stakes, sharpened at the top, deeply into the ground.

Huron tribe—The territory of these Indians began about Cornwall and extended westward to the great lakes.

THE VICTORIA BRIDGE.

Britannia Tubular Bridge — This bridge spans the Menai Strait between Wales and the island of Anglesea; it is 191 feet high, and 1841 feet long; it has 4 spans, the two middle ones being each 460 feet long; the greatest height of the tube is 80 feet. It was begun in 1846 and finished in March, 1850. *See* "Tubes," below.

Stevenson—Robert Stevenson, son of the celebrated engineer George Stevenson, was born at Killingworth in the north of England, in 1803. His father, feeling the want of education himself, determined to give his son every advantage he could; so, when old enough, young Robert was sent to Newcastle, and afterwards to Edinburgh where his time was well spent. After a year in the university of the latter city he returned home, and thenceforward was associated with his father in all his great works, contributing no little to their success;—their greatest united work was the invention, or, at least, the perfection of the railway locomotive. On his father's death in 1848, Robert continued to extend the great

work; he constructed many railways at home and abroad,—so many, indeed, that the united cost, it is said, would reach $350,000,000. But bridges also attracted his attention. He was called upon by a railway company to build a bridge across Menai Strait; and after a long series of experiments in strength of materials, he found that iron in a certain tubular form was strongest and lightest. So the bridge was built on this new plan; the same one being adopted for the Victoria Bridge. He was the architect of other famous bridges. He died in 1859 and was buried in Westminster Abbey among England's greatest dead. Mr. Stevenson was very kind-hearted, and was greatly beloved; he did a very great deal for the good of the people,—which is the noblest ambition a man can have.

Incalculable advantages — *See* the last paragraph of the extract.

Abutments—the piers of the bridge joining, — ending, *abutting* on — the sides or banks of the river. *See* the note under "The Natural Bridge."

Spring—start. The shape of the bridge is a slight curve, reaching its highest point at the centre.

Tubes—By "tubular bridges" it must not be understood that iron tubes are used instead of timbers to stretch from pier to pier, supporting the floor, etc., of the bridge; the bridge itself through which trains and people and teams go, is one immense iron tube. The floor does not consist of one plate of iron merely, but below the plate is a layer of little tubes again, a few inches, or a foot or more wide; it is the same way with the roof, and with the sides more or less. It is more correct, however, to say that a tubular bridge consists of a series, or succession of tubes. The Victoria bridge, for example, has twenty-five spans, and so has twenty-five tubes; the first tube starts from the abutment and reaches to the first pier; there it fits into the next tube which stretches to the next pier; and so on. The ends of the tubes rest on iron rollers, so that when the iron expands by the heat or contracts by the cold, it can move freely and not wrench or displace any part of the frame-work.

English mile—Compare with Scotch, French and German mile.

Girders—the timbers that, in ordinary bridges, stretch from pier to pier supporting the floor. In tubular bridges the tube is girder, floor, bridge and all.

Colossus of Rhodes—Rhodes was the chief city of the island of Rhodes (Candia, in the eastern Mediterranean). In the year 305 before Christ it was besieged, but the inhabitants defended themselves so bravely against their assailant, Demētrius king of Macedonia in Greece, that he was struck with admiration for them and made peace with them, giving as a present the warlike machines that he had used against the city; the Rhodians sold these and with the money so obtained caused a brazen statue of the sun-god, Apollo (*see* note under "Discovery of America") to be erected; this statue was called the "Colossus of Rhodes," and was regarded as one of the seven wonders of the world. It was over 105 feet high, and required twelve years (B.C. 292–280) to complete it. It stood at the entrance of the harbor of Rhodes, some say that one of the feet stood on one side and the other on the other side of the harbor. In the year B.C. 224 it was thrown down by an earthquake, and the fragments lay on the ground nearly nine hundred years, when a Jew bought them from the Saracen ruler, and carried them off, it is said, on nine hundred camels. From this name we get the word *colossal*, meaning anything very large.

Pigmy—*See* note on this word under "Ship-building in New Brunswick."

Shallop—a large boat with two masts, schooner-rigged; but it is often used for any boat. Sir Walter Scott calls the boat that Ellen paddles on the lake, "a shallop." It is the same word as "sloop." Some of the war-vessels, at least, of the ancients were not at all "shallops," but would carry several hundred men; the merchant ships, however, were "pigmies" in comparison with some of our ocean-steamers and ships.

Wonder—There were seven wonders of the ancient world; the Colossus was one, the others were the pyramids of Egypt, the walls and hanging gardens of Babylon, the light-house of Alexandria, the tomb (or mausolēum) that queen Artemisia built for her husband Mausōlus, the statue of Jupiter (of gold and ivory), and the temple of the goddess Diana at Ephesus.

Tonnage—*See* the note on "Ten-ton cutter" under "Voyage of the Golden Hind."

Miles—Words denoting measure are usually parsed as nouns, the "objective of measure"; in reality, they are old "possessives."

Young Giant—Canada is meant; it is called a "giant" because the country is so large, and "young" because Canada is not so old as the "Old World,"—known to Europe for the last four hundred years only.

Lord Elgin—The Earl of Elgin and Kincardine was born in 1811; he graduated at Oxford in 1835 and entered public life, as Lord Bruce, in 1841. After being governor of Jamaica he was transferred to Canada, where he remained from 1847 to 1854. He highly distinguished himself in Canada by his wise administration in a difficult time. He introduced our present form of government, and brought about the Reciprocity Treaty with the United States. After leaving Canada he was sent on special missions twice to Japan and China, and was present at the capture of Pekin. After being for a time postmaster-general, he was sent, in 1861, to India as Governor-General, and died there in 1863.

Coffer-dam—A coffer-dam is an appliance used in bridge-building to lay bare a space at the bottom of a river, etc., large enough to form the foundation of a pier. A common method employed when the water is of any depth, is to drive down piles close together enclosing the required space; then by means of plank, and earth, and cement, etc., the enclosure is made water-tight, and the water inside is pumped out, after which the workmen can enter and do what they wish. Sometimes, when the water is not deep, a coffer-dam like a huge barrel is made on land and then floated off and sunk at the required place.

NOTE.—The Prince of Wales, in 1860, formally opened the bridge to traffic, driving in the last nail with his own hand.

THE RAPID.

Charles Sangster—Mr. Sangster, our best Canadian poet, was born at Kingston in 1822, and has passed the most of his life in that city in connection with the press. His poems have attracted very favorable attention in England and in the United States. "The St. Lawrence and the Saguenay," "Hesperus," "The Falls of the Chaudière," "The Mystery," are among his best productions.

All—an adverb.

Bateau—bah-tō, French for "boat", the accent in this line is on the first syllable.

Rapid—*See* note under "The River St. Lawrence."

Bark—a vessel, boat; often spelled "barque."

NOTE.—It will be noticed that the author of the poem tries to imitate with his words the motion of the boat and of the water; he is fairly successful in doing it.

GALLANTRY OF A MARINE.

Canadian insurgents—*See* the History of Canada.

Marines—soldiers, that serve generally on ship-board, not the common sailors.

Militia—*See* the note under the "U. E. Loyalists."

After landing—Parse "landing" as a noun.

As had had—"As" is a relative here.

Orchard—This word literally means "a vegetable yard."

Corporal—In the navy a corporal is an under officer who teaches the use of small arms, sees that lights are put out, watches the gangway in ports, etc.; in the army, a corporal is next below a sergeant, has charge of a squad at drill, looks after the sentinels, etc. A "lance corporal" is a soldier acting as a corporal to a body of troops; he receives the same pay as a soldier, and wears one stripe on his arm,—the corporal having two. Give the meaning of the adjectives "corporal" and "corporeal."

Bayonet—This weapon is said to get its name from the city of Bayonne in France, where it was first manufactured.

So intent—What does "so" mean? *See* note on "So worked," etc., under "Cortez in Mexico."

Loading—a noun, though from its force as a verb it is modified by "again."

Sergeant—sär-gent. An inferior officer in the army next above the corporal. There are various kinds of sergeants,—as drill-sergeant, who drills recruits; pay-sergeant, who pays the men and takes account of the money expended; color-sergeant, who defends the flag carried by an ensign, etc.

FISHING FOR MUSKALOUNGE.

Ourself—a bad use of the word; say "I." The writer uses *our*, *we*, etc., in this extract, where he should use *my*, *I*, etc.

Trolling line—a line that one *drags* after him in fishing; spelled sometimes "trawling."

Thousand Islands—*See* "The River St. Lawrence," and the note.

Save the largest—"Save" connects *which* and *largest*; it is a preposition.

Skiff—a small, light boat; but in very many places, a skiff is a rather large, flat-bottomed boat. It is the same root as *ship*.

Satisfied . . tasting—That is, if the boat went slowly the fish would have time to examine the "spoon-hook" and might not seize it; but if the boat went fast, there would be no time to examine, and the fish would rush after the bright hook and take it, and thus be caught.

Bold shore—steep, worn away by the rapid water.

Solitary fish—This does not mean *one single* fish; but one that goes by itself,—whose habits are solitary.

Taut—stretched tight.

Gaff—a staff with a stout iron hook at the end.

Gunwale—gŭn-nel; the edge of the boat is meant. *See* Chambers' or Worcester's Dictionary.

Somerset—spelled also "somersault." The "set" in this word is the same as the French word "sault" in the Long Sault (sō), Sault St. Marie,—meaning *a leap*; "somer" means *over*.

Save a few—"Save" connects "length" and "*few*." *A few* means *some*, not many; *few* alone, means very often *none at all*.

Bauble—*See* the note on this word under "Discovery of America."

SQUIRRELS.

Mrs. Traill, the graceful Canadian authoress, whose maiden name was Strickland, was born in England in 1805. Previous to her marriage in 1832, she had written some books for children which attracted a good deal of attention. Soon after her marriage she came to Canada, and has done excellent service to the country by her numerous writings in various magazines in England and Scotland, all descriptive of life in this new country, with its hardships, and its attractions. "The Backwoods of Canada," "The Canadian Crusoes," "Ramblings in a Canadian Forest," are some of her books, all written in a free, charming style.

Rapids—*See* note under "The River St. Lawrence."

Musk-rat—or musquash; a water animal somewhat resembling a rat, but much larger; its tail is large and flat, and its fur very thick and close. It has an odor like musk.

Squirrel—The literal meaning of this word, it is said, is *shadow-tail*.

Neighboring island—*See* the note on "neighbors" under "Parting with the Esquimaux."

Address—skill, cleverness.

Point—direction as marked by the *points* of the compass. *See* the note under "Ashore in Anticosti."

Subterranean—from the Latin *sub*, under, and *terra*, the earth.

Not for me, be sure—Read 'you may be sure that they were not gathering in the seeds for me.

Manœuvres—man-oō-verz; motions, actions, tricks;—from the French, meaning 'a work or trick of the hand.'

Chinchilla—This pretty little animal has its home in South America on the sides of the Andes, in Chili, Bolivia, and Peru; it lives in large colonies, burrowing in the ground where it stays during the brightest part of the day. In hunting it the people employ a kind of weasel, that goes into its burrow and drives it out. It has very thick, soft fur from three-quarters of an inch to an inch long, of a slate-gray color, used in making muffs, trimming, lining, etc. The chinchilla belongs to the squirrel family, but has a head shaped somewhat like a rabbit's.

INDIAN SUMMER.

Mrs. Moodie is the elder sister of Mrs. Traill, and like the latter, began to write at an early age, and published a volume of poems in 1830; in 1841 she was married, and next year she and her husband came to Canada and finally settled in the woods near Peterborough. Mrs. Moodie describes their life in "Roughing it in the Bush," a book that met with a very favorable reception in England. Since then she has written several other works, such as "Life in the Clearings," and "Flora Lindsay."

Nature . . dreaming — People when indulging in day-dreams, sit quiet, careless, listless,—their thoughts not busy with what is around them; so the writer of "Indian Summer" says Nature at this season is like a person in a day-dream,—the weather so calm, quiet, listless, sleepy.

Winter's lovely herald—The "Indian Summer," the appearance of which is described in the poem, comes late in the fall—in November, thus preceding winter;—as a herald in olden times went ahead to announce the approach of some great personage.

Giants—Giants are so large and strong that they are suffered to do things in a rough, rude way; so winter is rough, and rude, and the cold cannot be easily resisted.

Wanton — acting or doing just as it pleases, with no reason but its own whim or fancy.

Gorgeous — This word implies bright colors and large size in the object colored.

A second forest—of course, the reflection of the forest above the water.

Deer . . doe—What is the gender of these two words?

Red . . glow—Fishermen often fish at night with a torch in the boat; the fishes are attracted by the light and so are easily taken.

Vessel-Is this word properly used here?

Swan that sings—This is superstition; the swan does no such thing. There are many things in poetry that we should not inquire into too closely.

AN INDIAN COUNCIL.

Sir Francis Bond Head was born in England in 1793. He entered the army and was present at the battle of Waterloo. Not finding military life to his taste he retired on half-pay, and in 1825 went to the Rio de la Platte in South America as superintendent of a mining venture. He travelled a very great deal in that region, an account of which he published in "Rough Notes of a Journey across the Pampas." He was made governor of Upper Canada during the troubles of 1837–8; since then he has been in private life. He has published a good many books; a "Life of Bruce," "The Emigrant," "Stokers and Pokers," "The Horse and his Rider," "The Royal Engineer," are among his chief works.

Costumes—*See* Chambers' Dictionary. The dictionaries place the accent on the last syllable of this word; but we frequently hear it on the first syllable.

While on their—"While" is here equivalent to "and."

Gorgets—plates of metal in shape of a half-moon worn around the neck.

Superintendent—the man whose duty it is to see that the regulations, laws, etc., are properly carried out by the men appointed for that purpose.

Its enemy—That is, the passions; a person must be perfectly calm, and without a feeling of favor one way or another in order to form a correct judgment.

Pipe of peace—the *calumet* as the Indians call it. This is always used before the men begin to talk in the council. Besides, this pipe is regarded as a sign of peace and friendship.

As it had been, etc.—adverbial to "one . . arose."

Great Parent — The Indians call our Queen their "Great Mother"

Salt Lake—the Atlantic.

Exordium—the preface, as it were, of a speech.

Legislative assembly — an assembly that makes laws.

Metaphors—A metaphor is a way of speaking in which one person, thing, action, etc., is called another to which it bears a resemblance in some way. David says "The Lord is my shield;"—a shield protects from injury—so the Lord, David says, protected him. "Framework," "wild-flowers" and

"architecture," in the extract below, are metaphors.

Red men had melted—It is believed by many that the Indians were decreasing in numbers before the white man came to America. But it is certain that the new sicknesses introduced by the whites and, above all, the intoxicating liquors, have hastened on this decrease.

In general terms—That is, giving no particular account of any one thing, but summing all up in a few remarks; as in the extract, the writer does not describe the manner in which the Indians conducted the council, but merely says they did it well.

Aborigines—*See* the note under "Norwegian Colonies in Greenland."

Framework—the arrangement in the speech of the chief things to be referred to by the speaker; just as the framework is the important part of a building.

Wild flowers of eloquence—"Flowers of eloquence" would mean the arrangement and use of words and thoughts so as to give us pleasure, just as flowers give us pleasure; and "wild flowers," etc., would be that arrangement of words, etc., that was not carefully studied over and prepared, or imitated from others; but taking that form naturally in the mind of the rude, ignorant Indian, just as the wild flowers spring up and grow without cultivation and care, being beautiful notwithstanding.

Moral architecture—The writer has just above spoken of a "framework"; but this "framework" is not that of a building made of wood, iron, etc., for then it would be a *material* framework; but it is a framework of thought,—a *moral* framework. *See* the note on "Moral keeping" under "The River St. Lawrence."

Form—Point out the subject of this verb.

Labyrinth—*See* Chambers' Dictionary.

White brethren—How so? Why not *brothers?*

Gazing . . admiration—This is another metaphor; Sir Francis seems fond of them. He means that we, civilized people, on thinking over all things that we possess, our wealth, education, refinement, etc., despise the rude Indian;—just as a man admires his appearance in a looking-glass, and thinks he is much handsomer than another.

Hansard—This word means with us a full report of the debates, etc., in parliament. It takes its name from a printing firm founded by one Luke Hansard in 1800; this firm did the printing for the House of Commons. At a later time the firm used to collect from the morning papers the various reports of speeches in the parliament, send them to the ones who had made them to be revised, and then print them.

Great Father—William IV. is meant.

Sell their lands—Our Canadian government in dealing with the Indians about land always regard the Indians as the real owners, and buy from them all that is required. The Indians are thus never cheated, never driven away, and consequently never make war on our people; for they say they have honestly sold the land and it is no longer theirs.

Ally—This has been the case ever since the days of the old colonies. As *subjects* the people *have* to obey the laws made for them; as *allies* they are free, and can only be made to do certain things by their own consent. Hence the Indians are always consulted about new laws, regulations, etc., regarding them.

FALLS OF NIAGARA.

The Earl of Carlisle was born in 1802, and entered public life in 1826; in 1830 he obtained a seat in the House of Commons, and became a peer in 1848. He obtained some celebrity as a writer, and as a lecturer. "Diary in Turkish and Greek Waters" is a well-known book of his. He died in 1864.

Nothing great or bright—"Great" and "bright" are here used as nouns, the object of "of" understood,—'nothing *of* great or *of* bright.' This construction follows such words as nothing, something, everything.

Thou mayst—Supply "that" before "thou."

Cloud—This word and most of the nouns of the following twelve lines are in apposition with "great or bright."

Stirring . deep—the rolling of the ocean in a storm.

Upper skies—Why not the lower ones too? *Storm-clouds* are always low.

Passion—the daring, adventurous, lib-

erty-loving spirit of the English.

Prowess—The dictionaries merely give as the meaning of this word, bravery, gallantry, etc., especially in war; but it *really* means *successful bravery*, etc. Refer to some of the results of Britain's prowess.

Homer—A Greek poet, the most famous of all the poets of the ancient world,—some say the most famous that ever lived; others say that Shakspere alone was equal to him. It is not known exactly at what time he lived, but most learned men suppose it was somewhere about 800 years before Christ. Many cities used to claim the honor of his birth-place, among the rest Athens in Greece, and Smyrna in Asia Minor. Some old historians say he was blind. His two great poems are the "Iliad" and the "Odyssey" (ŏd-is-see);—the first giving an account of the quarrel between two Greek heroes at the siege of Troy (or Ilium), a city in Asia Minor, situated very near the southern entrance of the Dardanelles; and the latter, the story of the ten-years' wanderings and sufferings of one of the Greek heroes, Ulysses (you-lis-sees).

Roman Power—The Roman armies, in ancient times, were thoroughly disciplined, and were thus more than a match for the brave, but undisciplined, nations with whom they generally fought. The Roman empire in its best days included Britain (not Ireland), all the countries around the Mediterranean—Spain, Portugal, France,—all west of the Rhine, all south of the Danube, and Roumania north of it,—a narrow strip all along the north shore of the Black Sea; also all Turkey in Asia west of the Euphrates (not Arabia); and all north Africa to the Atlantic.

Britannia's trident—The ancient Romans were accustomed to represent, or symbolize, a country by the figure or picture of a woman, and this practice is still kept up. "Britannia" is the name given to the figure of the woman representing Great Britain; in pictures and on coins she generally appears supporting a shield by her left hand, and grasping in her right what looks like a three-tined fork, or eel-spear:—this last is called a *trident*—Latin *tri*, three; and *dens* a tooth—and signifies rule or authority over the ocean. The line in the poem, then, means the great power of Great Britain on sea, surpassing all other nations. We often meet with the expression "Britain rules the sea"; and the poet Campbell in his national song of "Rule Britannia," sings how "Britannia rules the waves." We sometimes see the picture of an old man bearing the trident; this represents Neptune, the god of the sea, among the ancient Greeks and Romans.

America's young shout—This is merely a poetic turn for 'the freedom of America,' a *young* nation compared with those of the Old World.

Wars . . steeps—The poet wishes that the only war that may ever rage around Niagara may be the war in the waters; when this war ceases, which will be never, then may there be a war among the nations on its banks. Who are those nations?

Repose in peace—Supply "may" with "repose."

NOTE.—Compare with "The Falls of Niagara" by Brainerd and notes under it,—Fourth Reader.

THE TAKING OF DETROIT.

NOTE.—Reference must be made to the History of Canada for an account of the war in which this exploit took place, and also for other historical facts mentioned.

Detroit—a French word, meaning "a strait."

Barrier—*See* the note on "embarrassed" under "The Norwegian Colonies in Greenland."

Population—Detroit has twice as many people now.

Cloaking, etc.—As a cloak covers or hides the body, so this "pretence" covered or hid the real purpose.

Imaginary insult—Not quite imaginary. *See* Greene's History of England,—the war against Napoleon.

General Hull—This American general had served during the revolutionary war; after his surrender of Detroit he was tried for cowardice and sentenced to death by his government; but in consideration of his age and former services the sentence was remitted, but he was dismissed from the army.

Amherstburg—*See* the Geography; this village, formerly called Malden, was named after General Amherst, for an account of whom, *see* History of Can-

ada during the Colonial (or Seven Years') War.

Regulars—*See* note on "militia" under "The U. E. Loyalists."

Sir Isaac Brock—was born in the island of Guernsey in 1769; he entered the army when only fifteen and saw active service in several places during the wars of that time; among the rest he was on board the fleet when, in 1801, Nelson attacked the Danes at Copenhagen. In 1802 he came with his regiment to Canada, and was here when the war with the Americans broke out in 1812. For the rest of Brock's life, *see* the History of Canada.

Exigencies — needs, requirements, — what is demanded.

Proctor — Lieutenant-General Proctor was born of a Welsh family in 1787. He joined the army at an early age, and when the war of 1812 broke out he came with his regiment to Canada, and joining General Brock, was sent to Amherstburg and defeated the Americans near there, thus helping on materially the capture of Detroit. He defeated the enemy again next year, 1813, at the river Raisin. At the battle of Moraviantown on the Thames, he is said to have made a mistake by retreating; he was tried for it and deprived of his position in the army for six months and his pay. Canadians thought that this punishment was not deserved. He had command again during the war He died in Wales in 1859.

Militia—*See* note on "regulars" above.

Grand River—*See* the Geography. Pupils will know that at Brantford there is an "Indian reservation," that is, a large tract of land set apart for the Indians alone,—the Iroquois.

Old scores- This refers to wars that the people of the United States had with the Indians in the early years of the century, especially in 1810 and 1811. In former times accounts, etc., were kept by means of *scores* or *notches* cut in a stick; afterwards marks were made with chalk, etc., as more convenient, but the name "score" was retained though meaning a *cut*. It is easily seen how chalk-marks could be readily "wiped out"; when this was done it meant that the debt was paid. Nowadays 'wiping out old scores,' or 'paying old scores' means 'paying a person back,'—having revenge.

Motley—of all classes and kinds, a confused mixture of various things. "A motley crowd" consists of people of different kinds and appearances; "motley fleet"—of all kinds of boats.

Tecumseh—This renowned Shawanee chief was born in 1770 in Ohio. When he had the command of his tribe, fearing that the Americans wished to deprive the Indians of their lands, he tried to form a league of all the Indians in a war against the intruders; but the plan failed and he joined the English in the war of 1812. He was killed at the battle of Moraviantown. Many anecdotes are told of his honesty. On one occasion, it is related, when he was with the English army an American farmer came into the camp and complained that his cattle had been taken from him; the commander ordered him to be gone; but Tecumseh, indignant at such treatment, asked the commander for some money, and when it was given to him, he handed it to the farmer.

Disguised—so as to make them look like regulars, and thus frighten the Americans more.

Skirmishers—These are men sent before an army to fight in a loose, irregular way, very often to attract the attention of the enemy while some movement is taking place in the main army.

Parapets—*See* Chambers' Dictionary.

Palisades—*See* the note under "Jacques Cartier at Hochelaga."

Flanking—protecting the *flank*, or side; it sometimes means attacking and defeating the flank of an army.

Making—This word may be regarded as qualifying "force" in the preceding line; but perhaps it is best to say that it forms with "all" understood, an absolute phrase.

Carry by assault—to capture by rushing up, or climbing over the walls, etc.

Scale—climb over.

Examine the priming—Muskets were not discharged by percussion caps. At the right side of the barrel near the stock there was a "pan," or a little, hollow, iron plate attached, from which a little hole led into the inside of the barrel; the pan had a close-fitting cover, a part of which stood upright. When the powder was put into the musket some of it ran through the little hole into the pan; but there was danger that the hole might get choked up, and hence the necessity for looking if the powder (or "priming" as it was called) was in the pan. The hammer held a piece of flint, which, when the trigger was pulled, struck violently against the upright piece of the pan-cover, knocking it back and sending a spark into the powder of the pan; this set the musket off.

Flag of truce—Its color is always white, signifying peace.

Capitulation—A surrender on certain conditions.

Signal—remarkable, complete.

LUMBERING.

Lumber—In England this word has not the meaning here given to it; it signifies old furniture, "traps," etc., piled away as useless. The derivation is singular; it is the same as *Lombard*, an inhabitant of Lombardy in Italy. When the Jews were expelled from England in the reign of Edward I. (*See* notes under "Conquest of Wales.") the Lombards took their places as money-lenders. Of course, the Lombards would not lend money without security of some kind; so they took as security jewels, clothes, weapons, in short, almost anything of value,—just as pawnbrokers do now. Thus a storeroom of the Lombards would contain a remarkable variety of articles; so in course of time any room that was used for stowing away all sorts of things was called a *lumber*-room, or Lombard's room; and then, when the real meaning was forgotten, the confused mass of articles was called *lumber*. On this side of the Atlantic the meaning has been extended so as to include boards, deal, etc.

Mississippi and St. Lawrence—*See* "The St. Lawrence" and notes under it.

Only the timber—In Canada the governments of the various provinces sell the timber of the crown (or government) lands.

Felling, etc.—are nouns, objects of "in," but from their force as verbs may have an object in their turn after them.

So as to form—*See* Abbott's "How to Parse" on these elliptical, infinitive phrases.

Penobscot—in the State of Maine.

Rapids—*See* notes under "The St. Lawrence." How do rafts get past the Chaudiere falls at Ottawa?

No less—Since "less" qualifies "*feet*" understood, we might expect "fewer" instead, since "fewer" refers to number and "less" to quantity; but it will be noticed that "quantity" is *really* meant, not number; hence "less" is correct.

Square feet—Nouns following dozen, score, hundred, thousand, etc., are governed by "of" understood;—these words being nouns themselves, not numerals.

Craft—vessels. "Craft" has no form for the plural. Mention others like it. "Craft" also means "trade," and then has the regular plural. "Cunning" (noun) is another meaning.

Neighborhood—*See* the note on this word under "Parting with the Esquimaux."

Plank—These are thicker than boards, varying from 1½ to 4 inches in thickness, and from 6 inches upwards in width. "Plank" and "deal" have properly no plural form.

Deal and battens—Deal are nearly like plank; only the former must be from 3 to 4 inches thick, 7 inches or more wide, and 6 feet or more long; pieces under 6 feet are called *deal ends;* if they are less than 7 inches wide they are called *battens*. The name "batten" is also given to very thin, narrow boards, used for nailing over cracks, etc. Deal are made from pine, spruce or any soft-wood, rarely, if ever, of hard-wood; plank may be of hard-wood as well as of soft-wood. There is a verb "to batten," of a different root from the above, meaning to feed, or grow fat on.

AMERICA TO GREAT BRITAIN.

George Washington Allston, an American poet and painter, born in 1779, studied painting in London and Rome—living many years in England, where his paintings gained him several prizes. He died in 1843. His best poem is "Sylphs of the Seasons."

All hail—*See* the note under "The Maple."

Our fathers' native soil—The early settlers of the United States came, for the most part, from Great Britain. *See* Greene's History of England, reign of Charles I., and History of Canada. *See* also in Fourth Reader "Founding of N. A. Colonies" with the notes.

Oh stretch thy mighty hand—Great Britain is personified in this line, that is, treated as a person, and asked to stretch its hand across the Atlantic and grasp America's hand in a league of friendship. The hand is called *mighty* from the great power of Britain. In the personification here the poet is very careless, to say the least. In the first two lines Britain is called a "land" and a "soil"—there being no

personification; in the next line this "land" and "soil" is asked to 'stretch out its hand'—which sounds much like nonsense. If the word "parent," or "mother," or some such word had been used in the first two lines it would have been better.

Gigantic grown by toil — The poet means that 'Britain's power is owing to her great industry.' Great Britain surpasses all other countries in the extent of her manufactures; goods from Great Britain reach every corner of the world, and every corner of the world sends its goods, raw material for the most part, to Britain, there to be manufactured up into a thousand shapes again to be sent away, giving employment, or *toil*, to millions of people. The manufacture of cotton goods alone is said to support over 4,000,000 of people. By these means—commerce and manufactures—the country increases in population and wealth, both of which, if wisely dealt with, form the strength of a country. The chief imports of Great Britain are: raw cotton, flour, grain and food of all kinds, sugar—raw and refined, wool, timber—including boards, etc., tea. The chief exports are: iron and steel, iron and steel manufactures, cotton goods of all kinds, woollen goods of all kinds, linen goods, coals, machinery. Of course Britain has great wealth in her iron and coal mines, but these must be worked in order to be of use. If Britain depended for its strength only upon what the ground brought forth, it would be a weak country, because it is so small; it could not produce enough food to supply its present population even if all the land were under cultivation.

It may be noted that the hands of people engaged in manual labor are apt to be large.

For thou . . o'er—These lines, though just a little dazzling, seem to refer to the saying that 'the sun never sets on the British dominions';—that is, there is not an hour in the twenty-four in which the sun does not shine on one or more of the British dominions. So in these lines the arms of Britain are said to reach around the world.

Phœbus—fē-bus;—this was the god of the sun among the old Greeks and Romans,—here used for the sun itself; Apollo was another name of the same god. Phœbe,—fē-be, the sister of Phœbus, was the goddess of the moon,—Diana being another name for her.

Magic—*See* the note on this word under "Parting with the Esquimaux." Teachers would do well to have their pupils prove by their maps, or the globe, the "saying" referred to above. Start, say, with Ottawa at noon and show what British possessions have light and what darkness; then take Vancouver island, then Hong Kong, afterwards the Fiji islands, etc.

Genius—A country is often said to have a "genius,"—that is, a guardian spirit to whom the country belongs, and who gives his own character to the inhabitants.

Pine-embattled steep—The pine is the chief, or characteristic, tree of North America; "embattled" means "fortified"; the phrase in plain language means 'hills covered with pine-trees.'

The guest sublime—This is not very good sense or poetry either. In the first place, the poet, in the first stanza, asks Britain, not to come over herself, but to stretch her hand over; hence the *guest* must be the "gigantic hand," which would be a somewhat queer guest; again, we would hardly like to call this 'hand grown gigantic by toil' a *sublime* one. In this last case the poet evidently wanted a word to rhyme with "clime."

Tritons—In the belief of the old Greeks and Romans, tritons were sea-gods of a lower class; the upper half of their body was human, the lower, fish; they are always represented blowing huge shells,—conchs (conk).

The kindred league—As the forefathers of the Americans came from Britain, the two nations are *kindred* or *relatives*. In olden times, and in some cases still, when an announcement was to be made to the people, it was preceded and followed by the blowing of trumpets. It was done in India when Queen Victoria was proclaimed "Empress of India."

Then let . . fame—This means that, 'if America and Great Britain were united in a league, or alliance, so powerful would they be that they could overcome the whole world, especially on sea, were it united against them.'

Main—the sea, or ocean; it is the same word as in 'the main land,' 'the main reason,' 'the Spanish main' (the northern coast of South America), 'might and main,'—all meaning strength, greatest part, etc.

Like—an adverb here; the noun after the adverb, "like," is the subject of a verb understood.

Milky-way—This is a broad, dim, irregular band of light stretching across the heavens north-east and south-west; astronomers say it is composed of countless stars. Why called "milky"?

Bright in fame—As the bright milky-way is seen by everyone, so the fame obtained by the united navies ("naval line") of Great Britain and America will shine bright,—that is, will be so great that everyone shall hear of it. By the expression "naval line" the poet seems to mean also, that these united navies, with their white sails, would stretch across the sea like the milky-way does across the sky.

Ages . . home—The first English colony founded in America was at Jamestown, Virginia, in 1606,—the celebrated Captain John Smith being the chief promoter of it. In 1536 an attempt was made to colonize Newfoundland, but it resulted in failure, as did also that of Raleigh in 1584, at Roanoke Island, North Carolina.

Past—This ought to be spelled "passed," as it is a past participle; "past" is an adjective.

Pilot—It is hard to say what the writer means here. Is "pilot" in apposition with "home," as its position would seem to indicate? This could hardly be, since the people were going away from home. It seems best to regard it as in apposition with "blood." The meaning then would be, 'as a pilot guides, or leads, so the English blood (that is, the English disposition) led them to cross the sea.' The construction is very awkward at best. A friend suggests that "pilot" may be in apposition with "home," since the aim of the emigrants was to found a home in America.

Untravelled — Referring, perhaps, to the fact that America had been newly discovered.

Roam — Do emigrants *roam* over the ocean?

Yet lives—That is, the same spirit or disposition is in the Americans as in the English—the spirit of daring, adventure, love for liberty.

Blood . . chains—All through the history of England we find struggles for liberty going on, notably from John's reign to Henry VI.'s; and again that long, fierce one of a hundred years, ending with the dethronement of James II., in 1688. Since this date advances are being made more quietly. Englishmen have been foremost in discoveries, in learning, in commerce—in short, they have been very active in everything for the good of man. Thus the Americans may be proud of proclaiming that they are of the same blood as these Englishmen. The poet has in his mind, too, the attempt by Great Britain to tax America, which led to war and the independence of America. *See* History of England, reign of George III.

While the language—The construction is,—'While ten thousand echoes greet the language,' etc., and 'repeat' (it), etc. The whole clause is adverbial to "let ocean roll," in the next stanza.

Bard of Avon — Shakspere, who was born on April 26, 1564, at Stratford-on-Avon in England, and died at the same place on April 23, 1616. For Shakspere's life and works, *see* Dowden's "Shakspere," "Literature Primer" series.

Our—As the Americans were originally Englishmen and speak the same language still, they can thus be said to own Milton as much as the people of England.

Milton—Milton was born in London in 1608, died in the same city in 1674. The reference in the text is to "Paradise Lost." Stopford Brooke's "English Literature" in the "Literature Primer" series gives a very excellent account of both Milton and Shakspere. *See* the sketch under "Adam's Morning Hymn."

While this — "This" is in apposition with "the language," etc., above. It is not very elegant, or very clear.

Meet—suitable, proper.

While the manners . . hearts—This is adverbial to "let ocean roll."

Between let ocean roll — That is, 'though the ocean rolls between.'

Our joint . . sun—This is another obscure line. "Breaking" qualifies "ocean," and "with" connects "communion" and "sun." The only sense that seems to be in it is, that the wide ocean between Britain and America prevents the two countries from being illumined by the sun at the same time. This is nearly true of California where the difference between its time and the time of London is about 8½ hours; in Maine the difference is about 4 hours; consequently the "joint communion," or sharing in the sun, is by no means altogether broken by the ocean.

Yet still, etc.—The writer means that, though the ocean separates England and America, yet the language, manners, arts, and blood are the same in both, declaring more certainly than words could, that they are but *one people*.

NOTE.—It is to be hoped that when America again wants to address Britain, it will not be in such wretched stuff as we have in this piece.

THE FALLS OF NIAGARA.

Hollow hand—The full expression in the Bible is "the hollow of his hand."

Bow—A rainbow is always seen in the mist over the falls when the sun is shining. The expression "His bow" refers to the passage in Genesis ix. 13, "I do set my bow in the clouds."

Who dwelt . . sake—The apostle John is meant.—*See* Revelations i. 9, etc. Patmos is a small island off the south-west coast of Asia Minor to which John was banished by the Roman emperor Domitian, who reigned from A.D. 81 to A.D. 96. A great uncertainty exists about the date of his death, some say it was in 89, others in 120. John was the son of Zebedee and is called the "loving disciple."

Chronicle . . rocks—The deep ravine, or gorge, through which the Niagara rushes from the Falls to Queenstown, a distance of upwards of seven miles, is supposed to have been cut out by the river itself. Sir Charles Lyell, the eminent English geologist, says, that supposing the excavation by the river has been regular, it has taken the falls 35,000 years to come from Queenstown to the present position; but he doubts very much if the rate of progress—one foot a year—has been regular. It is these marks on the cliffs of excavation by the river that the poet refers to in the words—"chronicle the ages" and "**notch his centuries.**"

Deep calleth unto deep—a quotation from Psalm xlii. 7. The meaning is that the noise made by one wave seems to reply to the noise made by another wave.

Notes . . might—The meaning down to "roar" is obscure here and poor. The author is standing by Niagara and hears its mighty noise; he asks himself if the loudest noise that man can make, even in his fiercest moments—the time of battle—can equal this! It cannot. And yet this Niagara is but a "babbler," 'a light whispering wave' in comparison with Him whose voice, heard by the apostle, was like the sound of *many* waters, and who drowned a world, heaping the water above the mountains.

War's vain trumpet—Poets usually take a trumpet as the emblem of war, because a trumpet is used in giving orders to troops, and because of its loud sound. It is a "vain" trumpet, because the glory obtained by war is not lasting, is not the right kind of glory.

By thy . . side—"By" is used here in the sense of "in comparison with."

Bold babbler—Niagara Falls is meant, not man.

NOTE. — Compare with "Falls of Niagara" by the Earl of Carlisle—Fourth Reader.

THE SKATER AND THE WOLVES.

Sequestered—away from others, apart in a hidden place.

Mazy—winding in every direction.

Streamlet—What does the termination "let" mean?

Fetters—properly irons for binding the ankles of prisoners; here it means the ice.

Peerless—without a *peer* or equal; Latin *par*, equal. The higher classes of nobles in England are called peers, because in olden times they were regarded as the equals of the king; the name is still retained though nobles are no longer the equals of the sovereign.

Jewelled zone—That is, the river glittering in the moonlight looked like a belt (zone) studded with jewels.

A few seconds more—Supply some words such as "give me," etc. *See* note on "Save a few" under "Fishing for Muskalounge."

Thought of home—Supply some verb of which "thought" may be the subject or object, as passed through my mind."

Tension—stiffness or tightness produced by *stretching*. The excitement caused by such a situation as the one mentioned in the text would make the muscles hard and stiff, as if stretched.

Fleeced—covered with white foam as the sheep is covered with the white fleece.

The thought—What was the thought?

This means—What means? Give the construction of "by turning aside."

Had my skates, etc —Supply "if" before "had."

Have its tomb—How so?

How fast . . tell — This means that only those who have been near death can tell what death is like—give a picture of it, as it were.

Original—That is, the person or thing whose picture has been drawn, etc.,—here death itself is meant.

Can tell— The object is "how fast . . picture."

THE SKATER'S SONG.

Rout—merry company.

Fires — the northern-lights or aurōra borealis—bō-re-ā-lis.

White woods—Why "white"?

Told—appointed, named; "to tell off" is to name or separate from.

Who—The antecedent is "we."

Lapland snow—Boys will know from their geographies that in Lapland the sledges of the people are drawn over the snow by reindeer.

Wintry breezes—Is it quite right to use "wintry" with "breezes"? What do we rather say?

Hearth—As this word is meant to rhyme with "mirth," it must be pronounced "hurth"; this was the regular pronunciation thirty years ago, though we now say "harth."

Wind—This word rhymes with "behind." What is the pronunciation? Which is the more common pronunciation of "ind,"—the one in "wind" (the air) or in "behind"?

Wage—People do not *wage* games; they *play* games, and *wage* war. Why then does the writer use "wage"? Notice the rhyme.

Splintering sound—referring to the cracking of the ice.

It waneth—"It" is not needed in the sentence. The termination "th," was in olden times the usual one for the third person singular, present tense,—and indeed of all the plural too in King Alfred's days. Pupils will have noticed this old termination in the Bible.

Silent . . hour — It was the popular belief in former days, that the dead, or rather the spirits of the dead, used to leave the grave at midnight to wander about above ground, and return before daylight, or cock-crowing.

THE PRAIRIES OF NORTH AMERICA.

Prairie—*See* the note on this word under "The Prairies."

Of boundless . . beauty—These two phrases qualify "they," as does also "undulating." Is it quite right to say the prairies are boundless?

Like—an adverb, because the comparison between actions—here "undulating" is the word on which the comparison rests; "swells" is the subject of "undulate" understood.

Bluffs—hills.

Deficiency of wood, etc. — *See* the "island groves" in Bryant's "The Prairies," Fourth Reader. In some of the Western States premiums are given to people who set out a certain number of forest trees. Newspapers have told us that corn on the cob is often found to be cheaper fuel than wood. If there were mountains running across the prairies there would be no lack of water; as it is, water can be obtained by sinking artesian wells; but as these have to be sunk several hundred feet till an inexhaustible supply is reached, they are very costly.

But to paint—"But" is an adverb; "to paint" is an infinitive used as a noun after "is."

Staff of life—With us *bread* is the staff of life, as it is the chief article of food. As a staff supports the body of him who leans on it, so bread supports life.

Those of honor—The writer means that there was no law in those countries to compel a man to do right, or no officers to enforce law; all that one man had to trust to in dealing with another was his word, or sense of right; so if the word was broken or the sense of right not strong, there was no help for it, no law to protect the person wronged. In such cases the pistol or the bowie-knife usually settled the dispute.

Cotton-wood—a species of poplar common in Canada.

Elk . . antelope—Supply "range."

Supply the place—That is, instead of the robin and the blue-bird being the most common ones, as in England, the magpie and parroquets are the most common.

Parroquet — par-o-kĕt; a bird of the parrot species, but smaller and with a longer tail; "love-birds" are a kind of parroquet. Worcester spells this word 'paroquet'; it is sometimes spelled 'parrakeĕt.'

Grizzly—grayish. The grizzly bear is the fiercest known, even more fierce than the polar bear; it is the especial dread of western hunters; it cannot, however, climb trees like the ordinary bear, but can swim.

Metamorphoses — changes in *form*—Greek, *morphē*, form; the singular is 'metamorphosis.' Mention other words

that have similar forms for singular and plural.

Grazing their horses—Notice the use of "graze"; we say "the horses graze the fields"—that is, eat the grass off; 'the man grazes his horses'—that is, finds grass for them, or watches them while they are eating grass; 'the horses graze,' or 'are grazing,'—are eating grass. Another "graze" means to rub against very slightly on passing by.

Less uncomfortable—The writer probably means that if the old grass were not burned off it would become matted on the ground and so be more difficult for walking over than if the hard soil alone were beneath the foot.

Festoons—long garlands of flowers suspended so as to form curves, etc.

Hurricane—The fire itself often causes the hurricane. Read carefully the account of the fire at Miramichi in "Fire in the Woods," (Fourth Reader).

Not that—"Not" here does not modify "travels" but rather "destroy" understood,—thus 'it does not destroy the Indians that (because) it,' etc. 'That' is used here for "because." *See* Abbott's "How to Parse."

NOTE.—Compare with the above description of a fire on the prairies, the fifth stanza of "The Western Hunter."

INTEGRITY REWARDED.

Annals—An account of what takes place from year to year—Latin *annus* a year.

American war—*See* History of England, reign of George III.

King's forces—*See* the "U. E. Loyalists," and notes under it.

High-sheriff—the chief civil officer of a county, whose duty it is to see that the decisions of the courts are carried out. *See* Worcester's Dictionary.

Gaol—often spelled "jail."

Principle of duty—That is, *duty* was the principle, or motive, on which Mr. Jackson acted; his *duty* told him he must join the king's army, and his *duty* told him not to try to escape when he was a prisoner.

Consequences—A law was made by the revolted colonies that any colonist joining the king's forces should be guilty of treason, the punishment for which was death. *See* the "U. E. Loyalists."

Simple integrity—pure honesty or uprightness.

Springfield—in Massachusetts. *See* the map.

High treason — "Treason" literally means a 'surrendering or delivering up' to an enemy from one's free will, not by compulsion. In English law, "treason" consists practically in waging war against the king, and in assisting or in any way aiding his enemies. For other offences legally constituting treason, or high-treason, *see* Worcester's Dictionary.

Supreme executive—the highest body of men appointed to carry out the laws.

Few governments—This word "few" almost conveys the idea here of "no." *See* note on "save a few" under "Fishing for Muskalounge."

Politic—prudent, wise, but not always strictly right or legal

Acquiesced—*See* Chambers' Etymological Dictionary.

Legal remarks—The law says such and such a thing is a crime, and such is its punishment; it feels no pity or sympathy. The meaning of the text is that, on hearing Mr. E.'s story no one said that 'Mr. J. was guilty for all that, and the law should be carried out.'

Blast of the desert—referring to the Simoon or other hot, poisonous winds that often blow from the desert and destroy animal and vegetable life. 'As these winds destroy life; so the law destroys all hope of carrying out feelings of pity or sympathy for a criminal.'

A SONG OF EMIGRATION.

Mrs. Felicia Dorothea Hemans, whose maiden name was Browne, was born at Liverpool in 1795; her parents removed to St. Asaph in Wales, where she was married. After some years domestic troubles induced her to return to Liverpool, where she staid only three years; she then went to Dublin, remaining there till her death in 1835. It was said of her that 'few have written so much and so well.' Her writings are very pure and full of the tenderest and deepest feeling. Most boys and girls have read her "Casbianca" beginning with "The boy stood on the burning deck"; and also her "Pilgrim Fathers" beginning with "The breaking waves dashed high,"

Filling with triumph—The reason the man is not grieving is seen in the following stanza; his thoughts are all full of what he shall own and become in the New World.

Bark—spelled also "barque"; a three-masted vessel having square sails on the front and middle mast, and schooner sails on the after one.

Ever and anon—in quick succession.

Main—*See* the note on this word under "America to Great Britain."

Clearer skies—The atmosphere of Great Britain, owing to its greater moisture, is not as clear as ours.

But alas—The woman grieves over the happy home and friends she is leaving behind, and the Sabbath and the loved associations of early life.

Gems . . bough—refers, no doubt, to the varied colors of the maple and other American trees.

Savannas—*See* the note under "The Prairie" by Bryant. The city of Savanna takes its name from these plains.

As to . . free—Words must be supplied, —'the forests shall be as free to us as they are free to the bound of the roe-buck.'

Hither, etc.—This refers to the notices put up to warn people not to go on the grounds of another.

Elk—*See* the note under "Moose Hunting in Nova Scotia."

Hearth—*See* the note on this word under "The Skater's Song."

Spoils—animals taken in hunting.

Give the names . . trace—A great many American rivers are called by English names, but others are not. Give examples of English names of rivers, Indian, French, and Spanish ones.

Leave our memory—This means 'memorials of ourselves' in the names of the "mounts and floods."

Path . . woods—by clearing them up, making farms and building villages, etc.

Works . . before—ships, towns, commerce, etc.

To dwell—is an infinitive, one of the objects of "teach."

Note.—The short lines in the last four stanzas are supposed to be spoken by the woman;—the others by the man. Compare stanzas three and four with stanzas two and three of the next poem —"The Western Hunter."

THE WESTERN HUNTER.

Bryant—*See* the sketch of Bryant and the "Note" under "The Prairie."

Note.—The hunter himself is supposed to be the speaker in the poem, not Mr. Bryant.

These pure skies . . unbroke—Compare this statement with stanzas three and four (especially the latter) of "The Prairies" by the same author (Fourth Reader).

Unbroke—used for "unbroken";—poets often use words, or forms of words, that prose writers are not allowed to.

Her—his wife.

I plant me—settle, build my home. "Me" is used for "myself."

Savannas—*See* the note under "The Prairies."

Barriers—fences that enclose other men's property. *See* the note on "embarrassed" under "The Norwegian Colonies in Greenland." Compare also the sentiment of this stanza with that of stanza four of the preceding poem,—"A Song of Emigration."

Measureless—Are these prairie-pastures in reality "measureless"? *See* the note on "unbroke" above.

Bison—*See* the note under "The Prairies."

Elk—*See* the note under "Moose Hunting in Nova Scotia."

Antlers—horns.

River-fowl that scream—Compare this with stanza six of "To a Waterfowl" by the same author (Fifth Reader).

Weapon's gleam—not the flash when the gun is discharged, but the reflection of the sun upon the bright barrel.

Stands at bay—turns around and faces its pursuer. "Bay" is from a French word meaning *to bark.* When the hounds have pursued a deer till it is tired out, it turns around and faces them and is then most dangerous; the dogs know this and so stand at a distance and bark till the hunters come up.

Brindled catamount—the striped, or streaked panther, wild cat or North American tiger;—literally 'the cat of the mountain.'

Act of springing dies—The hunter says he kills the catamount just as it is springing on its prey.

Lucid streams, etc.—All of them are not "lucid"—the Missouri, for exam-

ple, which is said to mean "the muddy river." But the poet is comparing these rivers with the rivers of the Eastern States that are tainted from having the drainage of so many cities along their banks, running into them.

Alone—This word qualifies "fire." Compare this stanza with the latter half of "The Prairies of North America."

Frost—used here instead of "frosty" to produce a greater effect.

Sear—In ordinary language it is only *hot* things that *sear;* but on living bodies the frost produces the same effects as heat does;—hence the use of the word here.

Gathers . . harvest—This is a rather unusual metaphor. (*See* note under "An Indian Council"). 'As a man in gathering in his harvest, strips the field of its grain; so the fire strips the prairie of its herbage.'

Well-springs of the main—the same as "the fountains of the great deep"—Genesis vi. 11:—as if the ocean was produced by fountains. For a note on "main" *see* under "America to Great Britain."

Aged past . . rolled—The hunter says that the old gray trees speak to him of ages long past, telling him there was once a time when they were young. The river gliding past him to the ocean, reminds him of the future which is as endless as the ocean itself, and which keeps ever going on like the unceasing flow of the river.

River—The Missouri is doubtless meant.

Thread—to pick out one's way cautiously and slowly.

Voice . . eyes—Whose?

NOTE.—It would be well for the pupils, immediately after completing the study of this poem, to read carefully "The Prairies" by the same author, observing how Mr. Bryant uses the same style of language in both, almost the same expressions. The teacher should read to the class "To a Water-fowl" by the same author (Fifth Reader).

THE BACKWOODSMAN.

Wilderness- Supply some verb as "is," etc.

Save—a preposition joining "sound" and "rustling"; t is understood in several other places in the stanza.

Alone—qualifies "I."

Regal buffalo—It is a little difficult to tell how the buffalo (or bison) is "regal"; perhaps because he is free, his own master, like kings are supposed to be; or perhaps, because he looks fierce, and bold, and proud, and magnificent as a king.

Beaver—*See* the note on "Venice" under "The Prairies."

Within the horizon—In reading this line "the" unites with horizon,—tho-ri-zun.

As o'er . . run—The construction is a little obscure here;—the antecedent of "its" is "wilderness," or rather, "wilderness of moving leaves"—'as the air's light currents run o'er its (wilderness's) ocean breadth,' etc. The wilderness of leaves was as broad as the ocean. It would be better to unite "ocean" and "breadth" by a hyphen.

Sky meets . . line—Explain how this is.

All is mine—Compare the first line of stanza three of "The Western Hunter"; and also stanza four of "A Song of Emigration."

Imperial—belonging to an emperor;—an extent of territory large enough to be ruled over by an emperor.

Bring these offerings to my soul—As this line stands there seems to be no sense in it. Possibly the writer may mean by "offerings" the feelings of freedom, independence, wealth and power that the sight he beholds from the mountain inspire in him; but this is a very forced meaning, since "these" refers to no noun mentioned. A friend suggests that "these" is a misprint for "their." If this were so, it would take away some of the forced construction; but the use of "offerings" would still be very bad.

My palace . . seen—The "palace" is the forest; and the backwoodsman means to say 'it is so old that it sprang up in the early ages of the earth.' *See* the opening of stanza six of the preceding poem.

Swelling bars—rising tones,—the loud sound of the wind. Pupils who study music will know what a "bar" is, and that the bars do not sound, or *swell,*—it is the notes within the bars that may be said to do this. However, in poetical language the "bars" may be said to "sound."

Cadences—here simply the *falling* or dying away of the notes, or sound of

the wind.

Though—This word connects "think not . . companionless" and "I hear . good night."

Star-watched-Perhaps the backwoodsman sleeps under the trees; but more probably he has a rude hut which does not hinder him from seeing the stars—its roof not being tight, and its windows without glass or curtains.

My father's—The backwoodsman says he dreams of his father's house, and all that was dear to him in the home of his boyhood.

Embracing air—surrounding air.

BOYHOOD OF BENJAMIN WEST.

Pennsylvania-*See* note under "Founding of the N. A. Colonies."

Quakers—*See* the same as above.

Emigrated—When a person leaves one country to go and live in another he is called an "emigrant" *from* that country; and he is called an "immigrant" *into* the one to which he is going. We have the verb "to emigrate," but "to immigrate," though found in Worcester's Dictionary, is very rarely used.

Native tendencies—those born in him,—his by nature.

Community—society, people, neighborhood. Quakers always use very quiet colors, gray being the chief one.

Drawn—Does this word qualify "cat" or hair?

Neighboring-*See* the note on this word under "Parting with the Esquimaux."

Primary colors—chief, principal colors; in popular language the primary colors are seven,—those seen in the rainbow: red, orange, yellow, green, blue, indigo, violet.

Wayne—A somewhat prominent general in the American army during the Revolution.

Composition—arrangement of the objects in a picture.

Benjamin West—On becoming a man West painted for some time in different places in America; in 1770 he went to Italy, and to England in 1773, where Geo. III. became his life-long patron. He became president of the Royal Academy in 1791. He died in 1820, and was buried in St. Paul's cathedral. West painted the picture of the "Death of Wolfe"—one known to all boys. In this picture he represents the men in the dress worn at the time, which was contrary to the practice of painters then; this idea of West's was imitated by others. He also painted the famous picture of the "Battle of La Hogue."

AN ADVENTURE IN THE LIFE OF AUDUBON.

John James Audubon, the celebrated naturalist, was born of French parents near New Orleans, Louisiana. He was educated in France, where he acquired a good deal of skill in painting; returning to America when 17 years old, he went to the forest and began at once to make a collection of drawings under the name of "Birds of America." This collection increased greatly, and, having resolved to publish it, he went to Europe in 1824 to obtain subscribers, so as to get the money needed to carry out his intentions. The great scientific men of the time welcomed him, and in 14 years the magnificent book appeared. In 1839 he returned to America, settled on the banks of the Hudson, assisting at another great work, "The Quadrupeds of America." He died in 1851. He painted most of his birds as soon as he had killed them, while the feathers were still fresh.

Trace—"Trail" is the more common word.

Copse—a small grove of small trees.

Hearth—*See* the note under "The Skater's Song."

Venison—venz-un; flesh of animals taken in hunting,—generally that of deer.

Jerked—a corruption of the Indian (or Chilian) word "charki"—beef cut into thin pieces and dried in the sun.

Forbidding—disagreeable, repulsive.

Suspected dull—This is rather a bad phrase; "suspected" qualifies "razor." Turn it into a relative clause.

Tomahawk—Sometimes the back of a tomahawk was formed into a pipe for smoking.

Flints—*See* the note on "examine the priming" under "Taking of Detroit."

Pallet—bed. *See* "palette" in Chambers' Dictionary.

Trio—three.
Providence—Why is God called "Providence"?
Hag—an ugly old woman. *See* the Dictionary.
Regulators—These were men like our modern "Vigilance Committees," who, when the officers of the law were unable to punish criminals, did it for them,—acting as judge, jury, executioners, etc.

THE NATURAL BRIDGE.

Elihu Burritt, "the learned blacksmith," was born in Connecticut, December 8, 1810. He is the son of a shoemaker, and went to school till his father's death, when he was apprenticed to a blacksmith; but all his leisure moments, even in the blacksmith-shop, were spent in study; after he had acquired his trade he used to work during the summer and study in the winter, and so closely did he apply himself that he soon had acquired a knowledge of Latin, Greek, French and Spanish; then he took up other languages with such success, that he has acquired a knowledge of almost every European tongue, including Russian, Gælic, Welsh, and Icelandic. He obtained great renown as a lecturer, speaking in favor of temperance and other reforms tending to raise the condition of the people at large. His power of description are very brilliant. In 1856 he went to England, and tried for a long time to bring about a union between the European countries to prevent war throughout the world. He lived in England for about twenty-five years, part of the time as United States consul at Liverpool. Mr. Burritt has written a good deal,—"Sparks from the Anvil," in 1848; "Olive Leaves," in 1853; "Things at Home and Abroad," in 1854; "A Walk from John O'Groat's to Land's End," in 1865, are some of his chief pieces. A fair sample of his powers of description is given in the extract in the Fourth Reader. Mr. Burritt is still living (April, 1878).

Natural Bridge—It is called "natural" because it was not built by man. It is in Rockbridge county, Virginia. The engraving at the head of the extract gives a view of the bridge.
Unhewn rocks—not cut and dressed by the stone-cutter.
Butments—or abutments. It is derived from the French *aboutir*—ah-boo-teér—to come to an end. From the same root come *but*—the thick end of a log, etc., and *butt*, a mark to be shot at. *See* note under "The Victoria Bridge."
When . . together—*See* Job xxxviii. 7. Read the full passage.
Measureless piers—The "piers" are the piles of masonry, etc., on which a bridge rests; here the "piers" are the lofty sides of the ravine. "Measureless" must not be taken literally,—it is intended to give us an idea of the great height of the cliffs, as the next line shows. The author may, however, refer to the vast bulk of the "piers," viz., the mountains themselves.
Sky . . full of stars—It is a well-known fact that from the bottom of deep wells, or from any place of considerable depth whose opening at the top is very narnow, stars can be seen at mid-day.
Five hundred feet—*See* the note on "Five hundred men" under the "Buccaneers."
Bulwarks—fortifications, defences or *works* originally formed by means of *trunks of trees*,—*bole*, the trunk of a tree, and *work*.
Key . . Arch—The "key" or "keystone" of an arch is the wedge-shaped stone at the very top of the arch, and against which the sides of the arch rest,—the stone that *fastens* or makes the arch firm.
Silence of death . . channel—In this deep ravine the sound of the wind or any other noise from above, could not be heard,—everything was as silent as the dead are. When a slight noise breaks in upon deep silence, the effect is to make the silence seem greater, more especially if the noise is a continuous one.
As if standing—Supply "they were" after "if."
Presence-chamber—the room in which a great person receives visitors.
Majesty—God.
Watchword—The meaning of "watchword" in this passage is "motto"—a word or expression by the sentiment of which a person's conduct is regulated. For another meaning, *see* the Dictionary.
No royal road to learning—Kings in travelling are supposed to have everything made easy and comfortable for them, while others may get along as they best can; hence a 'royal road' would be one in which there is nothing disagreeable. If we wish to acquire

knowledge there is but one way of doing it,—by hard work,—meeting with difficulties and getting over them as best we can; however much help we get, we have to work hard ourselves, no one can do the work for us. So in the extract; if the boy wished to have his name higher than the names of others, he had to use his own exertions and work hard for it.

Green in the memory—That is, 'will be fresh in the memory,'—or, as we often say, 'his memory will be living.' As green in plants is a sign of life; so if persons or deeds are still in our memory (*living* in our memory), we say they are "green" there.

Alexander — or Alexander the Great, the famous king of Macedon (the southern part of Turkey), conqueror of Greece and the Persian empire, the ruler of almost the whole of the then known world. He was born in B.C. 356, became king at the age of 19, invaded the Persian empire at 22; by the time he was 29, he had overrun the whole of the empire—Egypt, Turkey in Asia, Persia, Afghanistan, Beloochistan, Turkestan; at 31 he had conquered the north-west part of India; as his soldiers refused to follow him farther into, what was to them, an unknown world, he returned to Persia and died, when not quite 33, at Babylon. His death, no doubt, was caused by the terrible hardships he endured in his wars; though some say intemperance was the cause. He gave promise of being as great a statesman as he was a soldier.

Cæsar—Julius Cæsar the first emperor of Rome, conqueror, statesman, orator and writer, the greatest man that Rome ever produced. After distinguishing himself in Rome he was appointed to the command of the Roman army in Gaul (France), and subdued that country; from there, in B.C. 54–55, he passed over to Britain and forced the southern part of the island to submission; thence returning into Gaul he put down a rebellion; and shortly afterwards entered Italy with his army,—which was unlawful. A civil war followed, in which Cæsar conquered all his enemies, and became sole master of the Roman world. He was murdered by his enemies B.C. 43, in the 56th year of his age.

Bonaparte—*See* History of England, reign of George III.

Washington—*See* the sketch under "U. E. Loyalists."

Braddock—*See* History of Canada—The Seven Years' War.

Concern—anxiety.

Flinty album—"Flinty" is not to be taken literally; boys know that a knife will not cut flint—one of the hardest of stones; it means simply "hard." For "album" *see* Chambers' Dictionary.

Measures his length—This is impossible; for the boy could not raise his foot the whole height of his body—to say nothing about holding on in the mean time.

Lasted a moment, etc.—On looking down from a lofty place people are apt to grow dizzy and so fall.

Dilemma—a state in which a person is *caught* between *two* difficulties,—originally used in reference to arguments.

Freeze their young blood—a quotation from Shakspeare's play of Hamlet, Act I. scene 5; "their" is "thy" in the play.

Anticipates his desire—understands what the boy wants without being told.

Fall alone—The author means, probably, that the death of the boy in the presence of his parents would kill them too.

Vital—life giving; hope always urges us onward.

And others — Supply "of" before "others."

Spliced—"To splice" ropes is to interweave their ends in such a manner as to make them hold as firmly together as if there had been no break.

Devoted . . devoted — The first "devoted" means doomed, fated, destined, —generally to something bad; the second means eager, strongly attached to —as, 'A mother is devoted to her children.'

Abyss — a gulf or chasm; the literal meaning is *without bottom*.

THE LAKE OF THE DISMAL SWAMP.

Thomas Moore, Ireland's greatest poet, was born in Dublin in 1779. He studied at Trinity College, Dublin, and then went to London to enter upon law; but he preferred poetry. His first publication of importance was a translation of the Greek poet Anacreon. In 1803 he received an appointment in Bermuda; while there he paid a visit to the United States, where he heard the story of the poem—"The Lake of the Dismal Swamp." He wrote all kinds of poetry,—his songs, perhaps, have given him the

greatest renown. Who has not heard "The Last Rose of Summer"? "Lalla Rookh,"—an Eastern tale, or series of tales, is among the best known of his works. He took a keen interest in politics on the Whig side, and wrote a great many satirical pieces against the Tories, so that in 1835, when the Whigs came into power, he received a pension of £300. He lived a gay, brilliant life, courted by the highest circles of society. He died in 1852.

Dismal Swamp—in the south-eastern part of Virginia, extending into North Carolina; the poem describes its character. It has a lake near the central part. During the times of slavery in the United States, this swamp afforded refuge to the runaway negroes. The scene of one of Mrs. H. B. Stowe's novels, "Dred," is laid in and near it.

Juniper—a low, thick, ground shrub with thin sharp leaves something like the spruce and fir; from its berries gin is made.

Fen—bog, marsh.

Steep—The subject of "steep" or rather "doth steep" is "vine."

Copper-snake—"Copper-head" is the most usual name; it is a very poisonous snake. Some few are said to be found near Niagara.

Indian . . camp—There are certainly no Indians there now.

Paddle—Supply "to."

THE AMERICAN EAGLE.

The Rev. John George Wood, an eminent clergyman of the Church of England, was born in London in 1827. He has devoted his whole life to the study of Natural History, and by his numerous publications has made that study very popular. Beautiful and accurate pictures of the animals he describes accompany all his books, and his descriptions are as accurate as they are simple and delightful. There is scarcely a boy or girl who has not read some of his books:—"Popular Natural History," "Sketches and Anecdotes of Animal Life," "The Boy's Own Natural History Book," "My Feathered Friends," "Common Objects of the Sea Shore"—and many more of this class, "Homes without Hands," "Bible Animals," "Natural History"—his great work. Mr. Wood, who is still living (1878), was editor for some time of the *Boy's own Magazine.*

Rob them who—We more usually employ "those" instead of "them" when there is a relative clause qualifying it.

It is true—What does "it" mean?

Heron—*See* Chambers' Dictionary.

Predatory propensity—natural disposition or inclination to steal.

Benjamin Franklin—the greatest of American philosophers, was born at Boston, Massachusetts, in 1706. At an early age, much to his delight, for he loved reading, he was apprenticed to a printer. Running away from Boston he went to Philadelphia and worked at his trade there. After taking a trip to England he set up a paper for himself. His carefulness and ability soon raised him in the esteem of the people of Philadelphia, and he filled several important offices. He took a lively interest in politics, and was sent two or three times as a delegate to England during the troubles that ended in the rebellion of the colonies. In 1777 he was sent to France and there brought about a treaty between that country and the colonies, whereby France gave aid to the latter in their struggle with England. He signed, in 1783, the treaty that gave the colonies their independence. Returning to America he died in 1790. He made many experiments in electricity, and was the first to discover that lightning and electric fire are the same; soon after this he invented the lightning rod. In 1732 he published his "Poor Richard's Almanack," containing very many maxims on industry and economy, one of which, it is said, was "take care of the pence and the pounds will take care of themselves." He wrote a great deal in one form or another, the greater part of which had for its aim the advancement of mankind.

Bald eagle—This name arises from the head of the bird being covered with short, close-lying, *white* feathers, seeming as if there was nothing on it; the word *bald*, however, means *white.*

Type—an emblem;—the beaver is the emblem of Canada; the lion, and also the rose, is the emblem of England; the thistle of Scotland; the shamrock (or trefoil) and also the harp, of Ireland.

Seated regally—proudly, like a *king,*—all others being kept at a distance.

Wilson—Alexander Wilson, the celebrated ornithologist, was born at Paisley, Scotland, in 1766. He learned the

trade of weaver, but in 1794 he came to America, friendless and penniless; he worked at various occupations for eight years, studying hard all the time, and learning among other things drawing and coloring. He then set to work systematically in his study of birds, collecting specimens, for which he travelled thousands of miles in all weathers, and amidst the greatest danger. The first volume of his great work, "American Ornithology," appeared in 1808, others followed; all the drawing and coloring he did himself. In pursuit of the work on which he set his heart he went almost from one end of America to the other, sparing himself no hardship. One of his great desires was to gain wealth euough to assist his poor re'atives; this he succeeded in. Honors from almost every sovereign of Europe were conferred upon him. He died in 1813.

Owing to, etc.—Supply "and this" or "which"—the antecedent being the preceding sentence—(they) were unable (to do so).

Audubon—*See* note under "An Adventure in the Life of Audubon."

Fawn—the young of deer.

Cuticular—belonging to the **skin.**

Quarry—prey.

CORTEZ IN MEXICO.

Cortez—(*oor-tdith*); born in 1485. He came as an adventurer to the W Indies. In 1519 he landed in Mexico with 700 men, 80 of whom were horsemen, and 10 cannou. The natives whom Cortez first met were hostile to Montezuma, and this induced him to march to the capital where the king was. The Spaniards were rearded as immortal by the Mexicans, but when the head of a Spaniard was sent to Montezuma another opinion was formed, and Cortez and his men were in great danger. This led to the seizure of Montezuma who, to get free, gave Cortez a vast amount of gold and gems. The governor of Cuba now became jealous of Cortez, and sent Narvaez to replace him; but Cortez attacked Narvaez and took him prisoner, and thus kept his command till he was called home to Spain. As usual, the Spanish king was ungrateful.

Voyages of discovery—Other Spanish discoverers were:—Balboa, who first saw the Pacific; Ponce de Leon, the discoverer of Florida; Magellan, the first to sail round the world; De Soto, the discoverer of the Mississippi.

Set afloat—started, planned.

Grijalva—*gree-hyal-va.*

Diego Velazquez—*dee-a-go vel-as-cdith*: he was governor of Cuba at this time, and had got a great deal of treasure by trade with the Mexicans; so he thought the country must be rich, and sent out Cortez to conquer it.

Lay to—*See* note under "Discovery of America."

Cruel excesses—among the West India islands; the Spaniards carried on a cruel war of extermination against the Carihs of the islands. They tried to reduce them to slavery, but failed.

Gorgeous—This word always conveys the idea of large size with beauty and color; hence, not a delicate beauty. We can say a sunset is *magnificent* or *gorgeous;* the Falls of Niagara are *magnificent* but not *gorgeous,* because of the absence of bright colors.

So worked . . . . . that he, &c.—The clause beginning with "he" is adverbial, modifying "worked"; or more accurately, in apposition with "so," which, however, modifies "worked." It shows the manner or extent of the "working."

As to drive—this is bad English; say 'that the Mexicans were driven to revolt';—this clause modifies "extravagant"; or, as in the preceding note.

Bloodhound—a large, powerful hound, with a very keen scent, and very fierce

Slain their king—Another story says Montezuma was only wounded, and feeling deeply disgraced, starved himself to death.

Creed—their religious belief; Latin *credo*—to believe.

Blood or tears—The Spaniards were extremely cruel towards the natives; they cared not how many people they killed, nor how much sorrow they caused. Whenever Spanish commanders received a commission from the king of Spain to make discoveries, they always said it was for the purpose of extending the true religion, Christianity; this was true to some extent; but gold and gems they mostly went for, and in pursuit of these they cared little what sufferings they inflicted on the natives.

Etiquette—*ét-e-ket*:—custom in particular places or circumstances.

TRAPPING A TAPIR.

Ephraim G. Squier, born in New York State in 1821, was at different times a teacher, engineer, and editor of a newspaper in several places. He explored the mounds (*See* note under "The Prairies" by Bryant—Fourth Reader) of the Mississippi valley and published an account of them in 1848; he did the same with those of New York State, and of Central America when he was appointed consul to Guatemala. He published several works beside the one from which the extract is taken:—"Notes on Central America" being one of the best known.

Tapir—an animal allied to the hog and the rhinoceros; it has a trunk something like that of an elephant, only very much shorter, and a short tail. the American tapir is about 3½ feet high and 6 feet long. The one mentioned in the text would seem to be much larger than this; but travellers' tales are not always very accurate.

Cul de sac—cul-du-sac—"du" as in "dust"; an alley open at one end only.

Our hero—Mr. Squier is meant.

Antonio—Anthony.

Shortening his lance—grasping it near the middle so as to give a firmer hold and to render it less apt to be broken than if held at the end.

Mosquito shore—the eastern coast of Central America.

SONG OF THE EMIGRANTS IN BERMUDA.

Andrew Marvell was born in 1620 and died in 1678. He was the son of a clergyman, and after graduating at Cambridge, spent four years in foreign travel. Soon afterwards he became acquainted with Milton, who made him assistant Latin secretary by permission of Cromwell. On the restoration of Charles II., Marvell became member of parliament for Hull, and was noted for his wit and sterling honesty. He wrote a great deal of satire especially against the king, courtiers, and supporters of absolutism; he always contended for liberty in religion and in state. The poem in the Fourth Reader is one of his best.

Bermudas—*See* the geography.

In 1593 the Bermudas were first known to the English; in 1609 an English man-of-war was wrecked there, and this drew attention more strongly to the islands, and a Bermuda Company was formed; this company invited emigrants to go thither, granting civil and religious liberty as one of the inducements.

Unespied—As the Bermudas are coral islands they lie very low, and are thus difficult to be seen.

Wracks—tosses about. What sea-monsters?

Lift, etc.—How?

Unknown—Why?

Kinder—Because the Bermudas have a finer climate, etc., and because there was no persecution there on account of religious or political belief, as there was in England.

Prelate's rage—In Marvell's lifetime almost all the bishops favored bitter persecution of those who did not attend the Church of England. Samuel Parker is the prelate chiefly pointed at.

Eternal spring—Situated in the ocean and not far from the Tropic of Cancer, the Bermudas possess a lovely climate, resembling warm spring weather all the time.

In care—'through care for us,'—'to afford us food.'

Pomegranates — pōme-gran-ates;—a fruit like the orange, with red pulpy flesh containing many grains or seeds in it. In reading this line the accent must be placed on the second syllable.

Jewels, etc.—The appearance of the pomegranates being more rich and beautiful than any gems; and besides the fruit supports life, which the jewels do not.

Ormus—This is an island in the Persian Gulf, or rather in the strait of Ormus; it is said to have once been a famous market for diamonds and jewels generally. The name "Ormus," however, was often given to the whole of Persia, and even to the East generally, where the great men are fond of the most gorgeous display of wealth.

Plants—in apposition with "apples."

No tree . . twice—This line must not be taken literally; all the poet means to say is that the apples are exceedingly fine;—so fine, indeed, that he thinks a tree must exhaust itself completely in bearing one crop. This, by the way, is by no means unusual; an extraordinary crop of fruit often kills the tree wholly or in part; young trees especially have

to be watched to prevent this.

Lebanon—a range of mountains in Syria;—the "tall cedars thereof" being quite celebrated in the Bible; a few are still to be seen there, travellers tell us.

Hollow seas—How are the seas hollow"?

Proclaim—'declare or tell that they have driven the ambergris on shore.

Ambergris—Worcester says ambergris is "A substance, supposed to be caused by disease, found in the intestines of the spermaceti whale. It is also found in warm climates, floating on the sea, or thrown upon the coasts. It is fragrant, of a grayish color, used both as a perfume, and to improve the flavor of wines and cordials"

Rather boast—The poet makes the emigrants say they would rather boast of the Bermudas' having the Gospel than of their having such fine fruits, etc.

Gospel's pearl—referring to Christ's parable of 'the pearl of great price.' *See* the note on "gospel" under "Norwegian Colonies in Greenland."

A temple—*See* note on "Bermudas" above.

Echo beyond—The emigrants express the hope that the countries beyond the Gulf of Mexico will hear the Gospel from them.

THE BUCCANEERS.

Buccaneers—This word is said to be derived from the Carib (native West Indian) word "boucan," a sort of gridiron on which the natives dried or roasted their meat. Besides selling hides to the Dutch and others, the buccaneers sold this dried meat.

Seaports—Columbus started from Palos; Cabot, from Bristol: Cartier, from St. Malo.

Adventurer—as boys would say, "one who goes to seek his fortune."

It must be remembered that, in Queen Elizabeth's days, Drake, Hawkins, Raleigh and others did things at sea that would now be called piracy, though deemed honorable in those times.

Highway of the seas—On land, a highway is a road on which everybody has a right to travel, because no person owns it; so the sea is called a highway because no one nation owns it, and all have a right to sail on its waters.

Preyed upon—that is, plundered. The song-books of sailors contain many songs about famous pirates, such as Kidd, Ward, and Kelley, who plundered the vessels of every nation and killed their crews. The only places where pirates now exist are among the East India islands, and along the coast of China. The English have gun-boats out there continually engaged in hunting the pirates and destroying their vessels and villages.

A powerful association—The island of Madagascar was, about the beginning of the 18th century, the head-quarters of another association of pirates; they tried for a long time to get England to take them into her service, but in vain; at last Charles XII. of Sweden agreed to receive them, as he wanted them for a war he was going to enter upon against England in the reign of George I., 1715

Pursued and murdered—This was one of the causes of the "Spanish War" of 1739. *See* Greene's History of England

American continent—that is, South America; the northern coast of this was called the "Spanish Main."

Smuggler—one who brings goods secretly into a country, so as to escape paying the duty on them. In former times smugglers were hung.

Because such—Parse "such."

Coast-guards—war vessels to protect the coasts.

Interloper—one who comes into a place where he has no right to be.

Offensive and defensive—an agreement or alliance between two or more, by which each is bound to assist the other either in defending himself from attack or in attacking others.

Independent of peace or war—that is, these buccaneers would attack the Spanish at any time, no matter if it was a time of peace or of war in Europe.

Mine of St. Domingo—The Spanish for a time forced the natives to work in the mines; but, finding them too weak and too stubborn, they imported negroes from Africa, thus starting slavery and the slave-trade in America.

It was taken possession of—This is an irregular construction, and cannot be satisfactorily explained; it will be as well to call "was taken possession of" a verb in the passive voice; we *feel* that this is the force, at least. In the active voice it would be, "a number took possession of it"; in the passive, properly, "possession was taken of it by a number." The irregularity consists in making "*it*" (the object of a preposition)

the subject in the passive, instead of "*possession.*"

St. Christopher—or St. Kitt's; one of the West India islands.

Unless a will was found-Pirates often had the reputation of burying their treasure; Capt. Kidd is famous in this respect, and his buried treasure has been sought from New York to Halifax; immense sums of money have been wasted in this foolish pursuit.

Honor among thieves—that is, thieves will not steal from each other,—they act towards each other like honorable men; hence there was no need of bolts, etc., with the buccaneers.

In guise of a visor—"guise," form or shape; "visor," literally, the eye-piece of the cap.

Induced to bind themselves, etc.—This is done still; but the laws made by the English Government to regulate the practice, are very strict. The persons so engaged come from China, Hindustan, etc., and are called "coolies."

Tortuga—an island near the north coast of Hayti; there is another of the same name north of Venezuela

Desperadoes -- thoroughly bad men, ready to commit any crime however bad or cruel.

Boarding—rushing upon the deck of the vessel.

Qu'eting their conscience—When the buccaneers felt they were doing wrong in plundering the Spaniards, they said to themselves that they were paying the Spaniards back for their cruelty to others.

Poetic justice—In stories in poetry we always see that the good are rewarded, and the bad are punished, though this is by no means the case in real life. Now, the Spaniards had been very bad to the Mexicans, and the buccaneers undertook to punish them for it; thus doing the justice that *poetry* demands, and that we feel is right. It must not be the persons who are injured that inflict the punishment, else it would be *revenge;* it must be others; and thus these prevent the wrong-doers from going unpunished,—which is the law of poetry, and which pleases us.

By thus assuming—*Assuming* must be regarded as a noun, the object of "by," though from its force as a verb it has an object after it: so also with "without publicly offering" below.

Acquitted . . distinction—acted very bravely.

Miguel de Basco—*mee-gail day bas-co.*

Portobello—a town and fortress a little east of Aspinwall, on the Isthmus of Darien.

Galleon—a large Spanish ship having a great number of cannon, and used for carrying treasure from America to Spain.

Eclipsed-This word means, in this place, "greatly surpassed." Show its connection with "hidden," "obscured," as the sun is by the moon during an *eclipse.*

Southern Ocean—Balboa, a Spaniard, was the first European who saw the Pacific; he gazed on it for the first time Sept. 25, 1513, and gave it the name of the South Sea. It was only in the latter part of the last century that there was any navigation of importance in the Pacific. The great ignorance regarding the South Sea was the reason the "South Sea Bubble" had such success at first. Magellan, in 1521, was the first to sail across the Pacific; in Queen Elizabeth's days, Sir Francis Drake performed the same feat; the chief navigators of this ocean in the last century, were Cook, Anson, La Perouse, Carteret, Van Dieman, Vancouver, Bougainville. A great deal yet remains to be explored.

Chagres—near Aspinwall.

After deducting, etc.—Compare this with the Note on "Leaving out of view," in "Founding of the N. A. Colonies."

Five hundred men—After hundred, thousand, dozen, score, the preposition "of" is understood; as a hundred *of* men. These words are *nouns,* not *adjectives.*

Jamaica—This island was captured from the Spaniards by the English admirals Penn and Venables, in 1656, and colonized by Cromwell.

Deputy—one who acts in the place of another.

Gave no quarter—that is, he put them to death.

A VISIT TO THE BOTANIC GARDENS OF ST. VINCENT.

St. Vincent — one of the West India islands. *See* map.

Botanic Gardens—gardens in which are kept rare plants, chiefly foreign, for scientific purposes.

Unprovokedly—This should rather be "unprovoked," qualifying "they."

After — "Afterwards" should be used here, because "after" leads to a doubt about the meaning.

Sensitive plant—a singular plant which, on being touched, will fold up its leaves and droop; after a time the leaves revive.

Far more than people—This is another careless phrase; it should be 'far more than *upon* people.' As the object of words is to place in the mind of others the thoughts that are in our own mind, we must be careful that our words convey our exact meaning, so that people will not have to puzzle out what we wish to say.

Generally speaking—"Speaking" is used independently in this phrase; but on turning it into a sentence "speaking" forms part of the verb in construction with the subject,—"we," "I" or some other.

Art—That is, by the care of the gardener, hot-houses, etc.

THE WEST INDIAN ISLANDS.

James Montgomery was born in Ayrshire, Scotland, in 1771; being forced to leave school on account of his parents' death, he entered into the service of a bookseller in Sheffield. The booksellor edited a paper called the *Sheffield Register*, which spoke out boldly in the cause of freedom; this drew on him prosecution by the government, a fate which Montgomery shared when he himself afterwards became editor of the paper. Throughout all Montgomery's poems there are displayed a strong love of freedom and a deep religious feeling. He died in 1854. His chief works are:—"Greenland, "The Pelican Island," "The Wanderer in Switzerland," "The West Indies," The World before the Flood."

Columbus—*See* "Discovery of America" with the notes.

Drooping—perhaps, because Columbus and his crew were despairing of reaching land.

Constellation—group of stars—Latin *stella*, a star.

Elysian—In the religious belief of the old Greeks the abode of the dead,—or departed spirits—was called "Hades" (há-dees); there were two divisions of Hades,—Elysium (ē-liss-e-um) the beautiful abode of the happy, or good, and "Tartarus" (tár-tar-us) the abode of the miserable, or wicked.

The poet calls the West Indies "Elysian isles" because they are so beautiful that we could not suppose anything bad to be there.

Orion—o-ri-un;—a constellation in the southern hemisphere known by its bright belt of stars. In old Grecian story Orion was a famous hunter, who, being accidentally killed by the goddess Diana, was transferred to the skies where he became a constellation.

Meridian—literally "mid-day." As the West Indies are within the tropics, the sun is nearly directly overhead at noon the year round,—which is the meaning here.

Shadow—As the sun is perpendicular in the tropics at noon, there can be no shadows except directly beneath the trees.

Breath of ocean—In tropical climates, the islands and mainland near the coast have sea-breezes in the evening and land-breezes in the morning. During the day the land gets hotter than the water, and towards evening the cooler air from the ocean flows to the land; but during the night the land gets cooler than the water and an opposite flow of air takes place.

Gales—This word is not to be taken literally here;—say, breezes.

Perennial—lasting *throughout the year*. On the continents within the tropics the ground is parched up during the hot season; but the West Indies, being islands, have a moister climate and so are green always,—of course brighter and fresher during, or directly after, the wet season.

Ambrosial—In the belief of the old Greeks the food of the gods was called "ambrosia,"—an extremely delicious food; so now in poetic language we often call anything delicious, *ambrosial*.

Amaranthine—unfading;—not to be taken literally.

Pride of freedom—With a moist, warm climate and fertile soil, plants do not want man's care, they are *free* from it.

Nature free . . liberty—Negro slavery was not done away with by the English till 1834; the Spaniards still retain it.

Sallying, etc.—That is, the water gushes from the earth out into daylight.

She—"Nature" is meant.

Stagnate—"Stagnate" means to stand still, lose motion completely, as 'stagnant water'; so, as it is always winter around the poles, and half of the time night, winter and night may be said to "stagnate."

Man . . skies—The poet means that where man is free, and not a slave, he will be noblest and greatest; just as the climate, etc., of the West Indies, which is best suited for vegetable growth, produces the finest plants.

Dead . . grave—The slave's life is one of continual toil; he has no liberty of action. He is bound to obey the will of a master; he is not free to do as he pleases; his life is a mean one—like those plants that creep along the ground, not rising proudly above it; having no pleasure in life, he is, as it were, *dead* to pleasure; and when he dies his name perishes forever.

Bondage . . air—The poet says, 'bondage is like winter,' etc., for it produces nothing pleasing, nothing happy; just as winter and night can produce no beautiful plants and flowers, and death and despair can give no happiness. But freedom gives everything beautiful, refreshing, grand and great.

The word "bondage" has nothing to do with the verb *to bind*, or the noun *bond;* it comes from an old English word meaning *to till* the ground. In the early ages of English, or German, history prisoners of war were made slaves, and forced to till the ground for their masters; hence the name *bondman* was given to them; at last bondman came to mean a slave only.

SHARK ADVENTURE IN PANAMA.

Don Pablo Ochon—done pab'-lo ocheówn.

Superintendent—one whose duty it is to see that others perform their work, or who has the care or oversight of work, etc.

Practical diver—one who, from personal practice, was acquainted with diving.

Diver—one who goes down into deep water to do work. Divers in the Eastern countries go down without any covering, having sometimes stones in their hands to make them sink quicker. In Europe and America divers are covered from head to foot with a perfectly air-tight dress; from the cap, or helmet, a tube or two tubes go up to the top of the water by which air is pumped down to the diver by those in a boat above, so that he can breathe freely and stay under water a long time. The front of the helmet contains thick plates of glass so that the diver may see. Before the present mode was invented divers used to go down in a large bell often made of glass; as the mouth of the bell was downward the water could not fill the bell on account of the air in the top; this air the diver breathed, and he could stay down till it was exhausted. A pull on a little rope would tell those above to draw the diver up. *See* "Pearl Fishing in Ceylon."

Monster—shark, etc.

Tintorero—tin-to-ráy-ro.

Sentinel—a noun; it may be regarded as in apposition with "shark." *See* Abbott's "How to Parse."

Falcon—a hawk.

Alternative—*See* Chambers' Dictionary.

Ordinary means—shouting, and splashing in the water.

THE EARTHQUAKE OF CARACCAS.

"Humboldt,"—Alexander Humboldt, born in 1769, died in 1859, was the greatest of all naturalists. He early devoted himself to the study of Natural History, and science generally; but, not content with books, he longed to examine tropical countries for himself. In 1799 he visited the Spanish possessions in South America, and spent five years in exploring them, learning their plants, animals, physical features, history, &c. In 1804 he returned to Europe, and, among other things, he wrote a most interesting account of his travels. In 1829 he visited the Ural and the Altai mountains, exploring the country in those regions. From time to time he took part in politics, being employed by his sovereign, the king of Prussia, on many important occasions. He wrote many books, all of the highest value.

Terra firma—the solid ground.
On the one hand—Parse "on."
Oscillation—swinging, heaving.
Holy Thursday—or, Ascension Day—the day of Christ's ascension to heaven; the last Thursday but one before Whitsunday—the seventh Sunday after Easter
Undulation—motion like that of waves. (Latin "*unda*" a wave.)
Ebullition—boiling.
Avila—*ah-vee-lah*; **Silla**—*see-yah*.
Vaulted—curved, arched.
Gracia—*grah-theea*.
Nave—central part.
So great . . . . any vestige—*See* note on "so worked" in "Cortez in Mexico."
Vestige—trace, remnant: Latin, "*vestigium*"—footstep.
Quartel-*coo-ar-tell*-quarters, dwellings.
Custom-house—the building containing the offices of those who have to collect the duty, or tax, paid on bringing foreign goods into the country.
Troops of the line—*See* note under "Death of Montcalm."
Under arms—having their weapons with them.
San Juan—*san-hwan*—("a" like "ah"); St. John.
Capuchin—the name of an order of monks.
Caraguata—*cah-rah-gwah-ta*
Buttresses—masses of stone or brick-work, built up against some structure to support or strengthen it.
Calamities . . . . . of Lisbon, &c.—At Lisbon, in 1755, the earth gaped open and swallowed up a great many thousands of people who were on their knees praying in the great public square; over 60,000 perished within six minutes; in 1693, at Messina, and other places around, 100,000 people perished; in 1746, at Lima, out of more than 4000 people, only 200 escaped.
Guayra—*gwah-ee-ra*; **Rio**—*ree-o*.
Falling of the earth—During earthquakes the ground sometimes is raised up permanently, and sometimes, as here, it sinks.

A HAIR-BREADTH ADVENTURE IN DEMERARA.

Hair-breadth adventure—an adventure in which a person just escapes great danger,—so near to danger that only the *breadth of a hair* is between. We usually say a "hair-breadth" *escape*.
By him—"Him" refers to the person—the "*subject*"—of the story.
Blood-hound—*See* note under "Cortez in Mexico"
Had he expected—That is, "if he had," etc.
Buck—What is the feminine?
Cougar—coó-gar; a fierce animal of the cat-kind found in South America.
Puma—nearly the same as the cougar; the American lion.
Jaguar—jag-u-ar; the American tiger, —the largest animal of the cat-kind in America.
Smooth bore—What is meant?
Orbits—eyes, from their *round* form.
Forced to turn, etc.—Many anecdotes are told to prove that if a person looks steadily into the eyes of a wild beast, the latter will not attack him.
Miraculous—*See* the Dictionary.
Prescience—literally, "a knowing beforehand"; the hound seemed to feel that some danger was going to happen to his master.
To save, etc.—adjective to *time*.

THE FAITHFUL NEGRO.

Preparations—*See* History of England, reign of William IV.
Ruin—Explain.
La Parterre—lah par-târe.
Negro slaves—*See* note on "Mine of St. Domingo" under "The Buccaneers."
Paul Dunez—pole du-náy.
Out of seventy—"Out" connects "one" and "slaves."
But his wife—"But" may be parsed as a preposition here, connecting "one" and "wife," etc. *See* Abbott's "How to Parse."
Dikes, etc.-Compare this with Holland. *See* the geography.
Spring-tide—not 'the tide in the spring of the year', but when the tides are *growing high*, or *springing*. For "tide" *see* note under "The Coal Fields of Nova Scotia."
Loyalty—the faithful following out of the duty that one person owes to another.

Equinoctial—when day and night are equal,—a season in which storms are to be looked for.
As best—"As" is a conjunction; "best" an adverb modifying "repair" or "do" understood.
As became—Supply "it,"—the antecedent being "fitting out," etc.

THE HUMMING-BIRD.

Mrs. Mary Howitt, born early in the present century, was fond of poetry from childhood, and composed it almost as soon as she could write. She has written a great deal in prose and verse, both by herself and in connection with her husband, Mr. William Howitt. A great many of her books are for children; others are translations from German and Swedish:—"The Children's Year," "The School of Life," "A Treasury of Tales for the Young," are some of her works.

Radiant Islands—Why *radiant?*
Thousand thousand—an endless number. Brazil is said to have more of these beautiful birds than any other country in the world; some of them are no larger than a bee. *See* the note on "Five Hundred" under "The Buccaneers."
Stately mosses—the tree-fern.
Cayman—the alligator.
Waves it—"It" is the subject of "waves"—'where it waves.'
Campanero—cam-pan-á-ro; the beautiful "bell-bird" whose note resembles the sound of a bell.
Rocks—The subject of "rocks" is "tree," not "campanero,"—'the mighty tree rocks.'
No winter—Why?
Lowers—lou-ers;—threatens. This is the same word as lowers (lō); as the clouds are *lower* when a storm *threatens.*
Thy food—Humming-birds eat the insects in the flowers as well as the honey.

AN ADVENTURE IN BRAZIL.

Rio de Janeiro—ree-o day jan-ā-ē-ro,—"j" like "z" in "azure."
Petropolis—Accent "trop."
Neighborhood—*See* note on this word under "Parting with the Esquimaux."
Primeval—very old, belonging to the *first ages*-Latin "primus" first, "ævum" age.
Excursion—literally *a running out.*
Count—"Count" is a title of nobility among the French, Italians and Spanish.
Berthold—bear't-ōlt.
D'Estrello—des-trél-yo.
Botanize—to collect and examine plants.
Minas Geraes—mee-nas jair-áh-es,—"j" like "z" in "azure."
Like butterflies—"Like" is an adverb here; supply "do" after "butterflies."
Parasites—*See* Chambers' Dictionary.
Lasso—a rope with a noose, or bow, at one end, used by hunters to throw over the head of the animal they are pursuing, and thus capture it.
Sprung—We should rather say *sprang.*
Pfeiffer—pfife-er.

CONQUEST OF PERU.

Huayna Capac—the Spanish pronunciation would be *hwah-ee-na ca-pac.*
Huascar-*hwas-car.* **Atahualpa**-*atah-wal-pa.*
Juncture—literally, a joining; time, moment, occasion.
Pizzaro—(born in 1471) had come to the West Indies and was with Balboa when the latter discovered the Pacific. He traded with the natives on the Pacific coast in 1515, and learned from them of the existence of a rich country farther south. Roused by the reports of what Cortez had done in Mexico, he returned to Panama, a settlement made by Balboa, for volunteers to invade Peru; but not being able to find enough, he went to Spain, laid his plans before the king, who named him Captain General of Peru, with leave to conquer what he could. In 1532 he landed in Peru with 180 soldiers, 27 of whom were cavalry, and on hearing that Atahualpa was with his army to the east of the Andes,

he marched thither. Then follows what is related in the extract.

In his desperation—in the dangerous situation in which he found himself.

Possessing himself, etc.—Compare the conduct of Cortez toward "Montezuma."

Our country—Spain.

Inca—The Peruvian name for king.

Remorseless cruelty—literally, cruelty for which he was not sorry; it really means, *excessive* cruelty, pitiless.

Dexterous audacity—boldness or daring well carried out.

Homage—promise of obedience and submission to a superior. Pizzar[illegible]romised to be a faithful subject of th[illegible]a.

Don Francisco—*done fran-th*[illegible] ("thi" like "thi" in "*thing*")—that is, Sir Francis. "Don" is a title of honor among the Spaniards.

Descendants of the sun—The Peruvians believed that their Incas were the children, or descendants, of the god of the sun; the old Greeks and Romans thought their kings were descendants of the gods; and before the English became Christians they too believed that the ancestor of their kings was the god, Woden.

Palanquin—*pal-an-keen*—the litter on which the Inca was carried by his attendants.

Dominican friar—*do-mĭn-ic-an*—an order of monks called after St. Dominic; "friar"—a monk—literally, "brother."

Pope had . . Spain—In 1493, the Pope, Alexander VI., in order to prevent quarrels between the Spanish and Portuguese arising from their discoveries, granted to the Spaniards all new countries west of the meridian 300 miles west of the Azores; and to Portugal, all east of that meridian. Hence Peru would belong to Spain.

Allegiance—from the Latin, "ad"—to and "ligo"—to bind. The friar said that the Inca was *bound* to the Pope; that is, he was the Pope's servant. See "homage," above.

Declared—What is the object of this verb?

On this—what?

Insult offered—The friar said that the Inca had insulted God by throwing the Bible on the ground.

Body-guard—a company of soldiers whose duty it specially is to protect a particular person. Here it was the Inca.

Devoted loyalty—a loyalty that leads a person to give up property, or life itself, to serve his sovereign. A mother's love is *devoted*, for she thinks only of her children, not of herself.

Characterized—that is, the *character* of the Peruvian possesses enduring bravery and devoted loyalty.

Following the practice—It was also the practice of the ancient Persians to flee from the battle-field when their leader was killed.

Their terror . . crowd—*Their* is plural, *crowd* is singular; why should it not be *its* instead of *their?* Give the rule.

The dream—Pizzaro had been told before he invaded Peru, that gold was as plenty there as iron was in Spain; and gems were as numerous as pebbles; and gold and gems was the base purpose for which the Spaniards came to Peru.

Baffles all description—cannot possibly be fully described.

Wedges—simply masses of metal, generally squared roughly.

Caciques—*cah-seeks;* native chiefs.

Pesos—*pay-sohs.*

Commander-in-chief—Give the plural of this word.

For ambition—who of the Spaniards should have the rule over the land, etc.

Put to death—The Inca was condemned to be burnt alive; but, as he consented to be baptized, the sentence was changed to beheading.

Puppet—This word means here a person with no will of his own, doing just what another wants him to do; just as a boy's "dancing-jack" is made to dance by pulling a string or wire.

Worse than all—The construction is, 'the Spaniards quarrelled among themselves, *which* was worse than all'; the antecedent of "which" is the clause—'the Spaniards,' etc.

Chazcas—*chath-cas;* **Diego**—*dee-a-go;* in English, James.

STORY OF MALDONATA AND THE PUMA.

Legend—a wonderful story from former times; another meaning is 'an inscription,' or writing, on old coins, monuments, etc.

Puma—the South American lion.

Buenos Ayres—boo-á-nōs ā-res.

Eclipses—surpasses;—literally "darkens,"—'throws into the shade' as we often say.

Androcles and the lion—an-drŏ-clees. This is a famous story from old Roman times. Androcles was a runaway slave,

who, wandering in the desert, took refuge from the heat in a cave. Presently a lion entered the cave, and coming up moaning to the young man, laid a paw on his arm. Androcles soon saw that the paw was much swollen from a thorn in it; he drew out the thorn, and thereafter the grateful lion daily brought him the bodies of animals for food. After a time Androcles was captured and condemned to death by being torn to pieces by the lions. As he stood in the place of execution, the door of a cage was opened and a lion sprang out, rushed up with open mouth to the young man, but suddenly stopped short, and then crawling up to him, licked his hands and feet, and showed every sign of joy. It was the lion Androcles had befriended. Then Androcles told the story; he was pardoned, and the lion followed him everywhere quite harmless.

Don Diego de Mendoza—done-de-á-go day men-dó-tha.

Paraguay—para-gwáh-ee.

Murrain—*See* the Dictionary.

Hard-hearted — In this sentence the earth is spoken of as if it were a person.

Famishing . . appetites—That is, they ate those who died, or whom they had killed.

Different way of thinking—How so?

Reveal the weakness—for fear the Indians would attack the camp and city.

On pain—under punishment.

Pale banner of hunger—as if hunger were a person, and the lord of the land. Why is his banner said to be *pale?*

Much to the satisfaction—"Much" is here an adverb. Supply "which was" before it.

Animated . . feathers—birds that fed on carrion,—vultures, etc.

Maldonata—mal-don-áh-tah.

Indomitable—unconquerable.

Wonderful to relate—Supply "which was" before "wonderful"; the antecedent of "which" being what follows down to "with."

Tooth and nail—That is, with all its strength and fierceness.

Don . . Galen — done frán-thiss rooaith day gah-len.

Curious—desirous; it qualifies "company."

Jaguars — *See* note under "A Hair-Breadth Adventure in Demerara."

THE GAUCHO OF THE PAMPAS.

Sir F. B. Head—*See* the sketch under "An Indian Council."

Pampas—plains like the prairies.

Gaucho—gou-cho; a tribe of Indians in South America.

Lasso—*See* note under "An Adventure in Brazil."

Corral—a Spanish word meaning an enclosure. Worcester accents the first syllable; but the Spanish accent the last, which is the pronunciation in the Western United States.

Undermine—The chinchilla does this in the region where he lives. *See* **note** under "The Squirrels."

Ostrich—the "nandu."

Lion—the puma.

Tiger—the jaguar.

A NATIONAL SONG.

A national song—is a song belonging to a particular country, and celebrating its glories, etc. "God save the Queen," "Rule Britannia" are the national songs of Great Britain; "Hail Columbia," that of the United States.

Of flowers—"Of" connects "choice" and "flowers."

Chose me—"Me" means "for myself."

The Queen—the finest and best.

That be—"Be" should be "are."

Royal rose—splendid, like a king or queen. The rose is the emblem of England.

The Rose that blooms—In this stanza England is referred to, being surrounded by the sea and having a rocky shore.

Pride . . foes—not caring for them.

Breeze—refers to war or threats of war. Illustrate fully.

A lion . . foot—The lion is another emblem of England; "her" refers to "Rose."

Thorns — This represents the men of England, or rather the power of England,—its means of doing harm.

Treasure . . gold—'The yellow heart of the rose,' the writer says, 'represents the great wealth and worth of

England, and the good qualities of the people.'

Thistle, etc.—The thistle is the emblem of Scotland; it 'grows ready armed' because it has spines on it.

She flings . . fall—referring to Scotchmen being scattered all over the world, and they do well wherever they go,—like the seeds of the thistle that 'grow wherever they fall.'

Grasp . . all—The writer means that we are apt to form a bad opinion of Scotchmen unless we are *thoroughly acquainted* with them (grasp . . close). In the next stanza we are told that the Scotch people are really kind-hearted, and firm friends, represented in the first case by the soft down of the thistle's heart, and in the second, by its hardiness in standing all sorts of weather.

A little leaf—the shamrock, the emblem of Ireland,—"a country in the *West.*" *See* "The Four-leaved Shamrock."

Mystic signs—the little spots or marks on the shamrock leaf. The shamrock, though resembling clover in having three leaves, belongs to the sorrel family of plants. According to the old belief no serpent will touch it. Legend says that St. Patrick used this plant to illustrate to the Irish the doctrine of the Trinity; hence the Irish adopted it as their national emblem.

Thy high . . woe—The shamrock also represents *hope* and *grief.*

Saints—The writer doubtless refers to St. Patrick, the patron saint, and first Christian missionary to Ireland.

Fairies dance—No doubt this is the way the shamrock gets its magical powers

Wit, etc.—Irishmen are noted for their wit and their bravery.

Tear—The author by this word may possibly refer to the wrongs that Ireland has suffered from England; but more probably to the fact that grief, or pathos, forms a strong element in Irish poetry.

Of flowers, etc.—*Flowers* stands here for *countries*;-the poetess prefers these three to all others.

Have them all or none—referring to the union of England, Scotland and Ireland under one kingdom.

LONDON.

Romans—*See* the History of England. Also *see* the note on "Roman empire" and "The Falls of Niagara."

Rose from its ashes--That is, soon was built again. This expression has its rise in a fable of the old Greek and Roman times. There was a certain bird in Egypt or Arabia called the Phœnix (fénix), being the only one of its kind on earth; it met its death not like ordinary birds, but was consumed by fire; but when the fire was extinguished there was found a young phœnix among the ashes.

Destroyed by the Danes—Mr. E. A. Freeman, in his "Old English History," says that this burning, in A.D. 982, was probably accidental like the one of 1666.

Saxons—English rather.

Successive sovereigns—James I. was one of them; but the people did not pay much atttention to the proclamation. Once when Charles I. wanted money, he made all owners of houses that had been built beyond the limit set by James I. pay a heavy fine or pull down their buildings.

Corporation—Those who govern the city,—the mayor and aldermen, or councillors

London of to-day--increases at the rate of from 30,000 to 40,000 inhabitants a year.

Nearly three millions—four millions rather (1878).

Bridge—*See* the geography.

Tower—The beginning of this famous building was made by William the Conqueror, who erected in London the "White Tower" which was his castle and palace. For more than three hundred years it was used as a royal residence; but *we* think of it chiefly as a prison for great offenders. For over a hundred years past it has been a museum more than anything else.

Tons—*See* note under "Voyage of the Golden Hind."

Entered inwards—That is, reported at Lloyd's (*See* note under "Ship-building in New Brunswick") as coming to London.

Bottoms—the *vessels* as distinguished from the *goods.*

London Bridge—This is one of the old original bridges, or at least stands where the famous old one did.

Docks—These are like enormous tanks or reservoirs capable of admitting many vessels. They are built of masonry, water-tight; they open to the river, etc., by a great gate. When the dock

is completed, the gate is left open, and the water of the rising tide runs in and fills it; the vessels sail in, and the gate is closed. Then when the tide falls the water in the dock cannot get out, and so the vessels remain in one position along the side of the docks and load and unload without trouble from rising and falling water. These are called "wet docks." If a vessel's bottom has to be repaired, the gate is opened when the tide is falling, and as soon as the water is out the gate is shut, and the vessel remains sitting on the ground, and can then be repaired—no water being able to get into the dock. These are "dry docks" or "graving docks." Liverpool has the greatest number of docks of any city in the world; they extend many miles in length.

Confined—small.

Merchantmen—trading vessels, as opposed to "men-of-war."

Quays—wharfs; pronounce "keys."

So as—"So" modifies "heaped"; the words after "as"—modify heaped, also. *See* Abbott's "How to Parse."

Fourth is water-the rest being covered with wharfs, warehouses, etc.

Incorporated—joined together,—made one *body*—Latin *corpus*, a body.

Pipes—How many quarts in a pipe?

Are among—The subject of "are" is "warehouse" and "series."

Colliers—vessels carrying coal.

Customs-dues—"Custom" is a tax paid on goods imported from foreign countries; "excise" is a tax on goods manufactured at home,-within the country.

Impressive—causing serious thought.

Red stripes—stains made by the salt water.

Barnacles—little cone-shaped shell fish that fasten on ships' bottoms and impede their progress. Another kind of banacles bores into the ship and gradually destroys it; this is especially the case in warm latitudes. The bottoms of vessels are often covered with sheets of copper, which is poisonous to the barnacles.

Badges, etc.—That is, these stripes and barnacles show that the vessels have come a long way over the sea, just as the shells, etc., around the hat of a pilgrim in ancient times showed he had been to Palestine. *See* Collier's History of England.

Pool—This is properly a body of standing water.

Russ—a Russian.

Tongues—their language; these people look alike, but their language is different.

Lascars—native East Indian sailors.

Practical humour—The word "practical" implies that the fun would not consist in talking and laughing, but in *playing tricks*.

Placeros;-plah-thâir-ōs;--a Spanish term for gold-fields.

Raw silk—unmanufactured.

Two Indies—What two?

Nantucket—an island south of Massachusetts.

Beautiful grain—the "grain" of the wood.

Steppes—high plains.

Deccan-the southern part of Hindostan.

Motley—*See* the note under "The Taking of Detroit."

Costermonger—*See* Chambers' Dictionary.

Char-woman—*See* Chambers' Dictionary.

Waited on by, etc.—Explain carefully how this can be.

THE BEST KIND OF REVENGE.

William and Robert Chambers, the celebrated Edinburgh publishers, etc., began life as poor boys; they set up a very small book store each, and afterwards added printing presses. They went steadily forward and at last began to write themselves; soon the brothers became partners. The aim of the brothers in almost all their writings and publications, was to supply good, instructive and entertaining reading matter at a price within the reach of the poorest, and no other firm has ever succeeded so admirably in its aim. The books of the brothers are in every school and every family. We all know "Chambers' Journal," "Encyclopædia," "Information for the People," "Miscellany," etc. Robert died in 1871.

Warehouseman — one who keeps a wholesale store for woollen goods chiefly.

Scurrilous—*See* the dictionary

Grant Brothers—That is, there were two or more brothers named Grant in partnership.

Libeller — one who makes statements regarding another knowing they are untrue, with the purpose of injuring

him.

Bankrupt — one who cannot pay his debts. The literal meaning is one whose *bench* is *broken'* (Latin *ruptus*); because four or five hundred years ago the seats or tables of those money-changers who could not pay what they owed, were broken.

Acceptance—a note presented to a man which he promises to pay and so writes his name on the back of it; the man may not pay it at once and the holder can sell it to another person. In this way the note of the libeller came into Mr. Grant's hands.

Drawer—the man who first made the note.

Indorsed—To "indorse" (or *endorse*) is to write one's name on the *back* of a note, — Latin *dorsum*, the back; by doing this the person makes himself liable to pay the note.

Wantonly—without any good reason, from mere whim or ill-will, like the destructive acts of a crazy man.

Signature—According to the law referred to, the bankrupt had to get a certain number of signatures of his creditors before the court would grant him a certificate allowing him to enter business again without being liable to having his goods seized.

Firm-a company, or partnership in trade.

They who had—Supply "would" before "they."

Counting-house—We say im America "office."

Tradesman — a man who trades; in America we apply this term to a mechanic chiefly.

Handkerchief—This is a very queer word; it is composed of three words—*hand*, and the French words, *couvrir* to cover, and *chef* the head. The explanation seems to be, that in France, Italy, etc., the women wore on their *heads* a square piece of cloth as a *covering—couvrechef*; the English afterwards used the same article, but not for the same purpose; as it was oftenest in the hand with the English they added the word "hand" to the French word—making a queer compound; but "pocket-handkerchief" is worse still.

THE STAGE COACH.

Charles Dickens, the great English novelist, was born in 1812. He tried law first, but soon engaged as a reporter to the *Morning Chronicle*, in which paper first appeared his "Sketches by Boz." The next work was "Pickwick," over which hundreds of thousands of people have laughed till their sides ached; this book showed Mr. Dickens to be one of the first novelists of the day. "Oliver Twist" came next, giving a picture of the life led in workhouses, and among thieves. In "Nicholas Nickleby" he attacks fiercely a certain class of schools in Yorkshire. All his works are intended to serve some good purpose, to help to make the condition of the poorer classes better, to reform what is bad in law and in custom, to ridicule and destroy sham and humbug wherever met with. Mr. Dickens was the founder of the *Daily News*, the leading Liberal paper of England. His novels are very numerous. "Martin Chuzzlewit," "David Copperfield," "Dombey and Son," are a few of them. When he died in 1870, he left an unfinished novel, "The Mystery of Edwin Drood."

Professionally-belonging to the trade; the opposite of "professional" is "amateur"—one who engages in an occupation, not as a trade, but merely to please himself for a time. The coachman in the extract was one by profession or trade; there may have been other as "swell" as he, but they drove their own turn-outs and for their own pleasure.

Perfect in—"In" connects "perfect" and "which."

Nothing but—"But" is a preposition here, connecting "nothing" and "knowledge" and "freedom."

Laws of gravity—Explain.

Guard — *We* would rather say "conductor." This guard seems to have been a "go-ahead" fellow.

Turnpike—*See* Chambers' Dictionary.

Foreshadowings-That is, Tom thought the coach and all were very grand, and so was London.

Yokel— clownish, slow-going.

Cathedral—*See* Chambers' Dictionary.

Took . . corners—turned round them.

Paddock-fences—pasture fences.

Bald-faced Stag—the name of a tavern or inn. *See* "Social Condition under the Stuarts" in Collier's "History of England." "Bald" means "white." *See* note under "The American Eagle."

Grown vain-The shadows on the ground

in the moonlight Mr. Dickens playfully compares to the images of persons looking in a glass, as if they were admiring themselves.

Oak—The oak is always taken as the emblem of strength, on account of the toughness of its wood.

Fantastic—full of whims, fancies, oddities.

Dowager—*See* Chambers' Dictionary.

Our, etc.—The coach and passengers.

Ghostly—The shadow of the coach is ghostly because it is ever moving and so difficult to make out; it changes its shape with every object it strikes against, and looks dim and airy.

Ditch . . wall—The shadow of the coach, not the coach itself.

As real gauze, etc.—Mr. Dickens means the light veils that ladies wear over their faces.

So please you—the same as "if you please."

Two stages—two divisions of their journey.

Market-gardens—They raise vegetables for market.

Villas, etc.—*See* these words in Chambers' Dictionary.

Tom Pinch—a character in Dickens' novel "Martin Chuzzlewit."

THE BATTLE OF BLENHEIM.

Robert Southey, one of the great English poets of the present century, was born at Bristol in 1774. He received a fair education, but had to leave Oxford after a stay of two years, because his ideas about the church and politics, etc., did not suit those in authority at that famous university. After travelling a while and being engaged in several occupations, he settled at Keswick in Cumberland in 1803. He had previously written "Joan of Arc," by which he became well known. He now began to work with great industry, writing very fast and very carefully both poetry and prose. His biographies are excellent;—some people think his "Life of Nelson" is the best biography in our language. "Thalaba the Destroyer," "The Curse of Kehama," and "Roderick, the Last of the Goths" are his longest poems; "The Doctor" and "Common-Place Book" are prose works of his. He died in 1843.

Wilhelmine—wil-hel-meen.

Great victory—the victory won by the Duke of Marlborough, in 1804, over the French and Bavarians at the village of Blenheim in Bavaria. *See* Greene's "Short History of the English People."

There's—This should be "there *are*."

Ploughshare—"Share" in this word means 'the *cutting* part'; so also shear, shire, shore, sheer—all contain the idea of *cutting*. "Plough" is often spelled "plow."

Many thousand men—The French lost over 12,000 in killed. For the construction of "thousand men" *see* the note under "The Buccaneers."

Now tell us—*See* the note under "Taking of Gibraltar."

Young . . cries—In prose would we use "he"? Why?

Blenheim—blen-hime, a village in Bavaria.

Yon . . by—That is, hard (near) by yon little stream.

Nor had he—What is the object of "had?"

With fire and sword—How would the soldiers "waste" with the sword?

Duke of Marlbro'—The latter word is a contraction for "Marlborough." John Churchill, Duke of Marlborough, was born in 1650; he entered the army when quite young, and served for a time in France where he distinguished himself highly. In the reign of James II. he held a high rank in the army; like most others he deserted James and joined William III., who gave him important commands in Ireland and elsewhere. He was not very faithful to William, having entered into a plot to dethrone him; however, when William was dying he recommended Marlborough to Anne. His great fame began with the victory of Blenheim. *See* the History of England for his other great victories, etc. He died in 1722.

Eugene—Prince Eugene of Savoy, the fellow commander with Marlborough in the "War of the Spanish Succession," was born in 1663. Early in his career he distinguished himself against the Turks, and his deeds in the war just mentioned raised his fame very high. He afterwards fought the Turks again, inflicting on them several severe defeats. He died in 1736.

NOTE.—In this little poem Southey wants to give some idea of the horrors of war, its uselessness, and the utter inability of people to tell why there should be war at all. Old Kaspar has heard about the war and tells of its horrible sights

and terrible effects; but yet 'it was a glorious victory'! The little girl sees only the 'wickedness' of the war; and the boy wants to know "what good came of it," to which question there is no answer. Old Kaspar is like most people,—he knows war causes awful misery, but he thinks only of the "glory"!

THE DEATH OF KEELDAR.

Sir Walter Scott, the great poet and still greater novelist, was born at Edinburgh in 1771. He studied law, but passed most of his time in reading old plays, romances, travels, in short everything relating to by-gone centuries;—he particularly delighted in wild stories of witches, and fairies, and demons. His first book of importance was a collection of old ballads called "Minstrelsy of the Scottish Border"; then came his great poems "Lay of the Last Minstrel," "Marmion," "Lady of the Lake," "Rokeby." In 1814 he published his first novel, "Waverly"; others followed rapidly and delighted, and will delight hundreds of thousands;—"Ivanhoe," "The Abbot," "Rob Roy," "The Heart of Mid-Lothian," "Kenilworth," are a few of this great man's works. By the failure of a publishing firm in Edinburgh of which he was a member, he fell deeply in debt; but he set resolutely to work to pay off the enormous amount,—over £100,000; he had paid over half, when he died in 1832. Abbotsford was the name of his beautiful home on the Tweed.

Keeldar—the name of a hound.

Couples—chains or ropes to keep dogs together.

Palfry—*See* Chambers' Dictionary.

Wound—This is the past tense of the verb "to wind,"—to put *wind* into; it has nothing to do with "to wind,"—to *roll up*. The past tense of the first verb should be *winded*, but *wound* has arisen from confusion with the second verb, both being pronounced alike. The noun "wind" (air in motion) is often pronounced "wind" in poetry. *See* note on "winding" under "Voyage of the Golden Hind."

Jovial—merry, fond of a good time; it is derived from a form, "Jove," of the name of the Roman god Jupiter,—he being fond of feasting, etc.

Alnwick—a castle, etc., in Northumberland.

Cheviot's rueful day—*See* note on "Chevy Chase" under "Destruction of the Red River Colony."

Tarras—the horse's name.

Thou . . steed—The order is "ne'er was stancher steed than Tarras." Another spelling for "stancher" is "stauncher."

Peerless.—without equal.

Wildering.—bewildering. Scott says that 'man, dog and horse, while sleeping, still hunted in their dreams.'

Sylvan, etc.—belonging to the woods;—"sylvan hope," that the game is in the wood; "sylvan fear," that it may escape.

Brake—thicket.

Afoot—running.

Woe the shaft—Supply "to" before "shaft."

Yew—the bow; bows were made of the yew tree.

Gray-goose wing—This is a very common expression in old ballads. The notched end of arrows had, as boys know, a feather in it to make it go straight.

The shaft be blessed—Sir Walter makes the dying hound say that 'if his master shot the arrow that killed him, it was an erring aim,—it was not done purposely; and therefore he says 'blessed be the shaft.'

CONQUEST OF WALES.

NOTE.—It may be as well at the outset to say, that the greater part of this extract is untrue, and slanders the king. Teachers must call particular attention to this fact. *See* Green's "Short History of the English People," but especially E. A. Freeman's "Life of Edward I."

Hebrews—The Jews in England in these early days were not under the protection of the law; and it was customary for a new king, on coming to the throne, to publish a proclamation sayir that he took the Jews under his protection; for this, they had to pay a tax. They were the chief money-lenders of the time, and demanded a very high per cent., often as high as sixty-five; this made them hated; besides they used to cut (clip) pieces off the coins, thus making money bad; they were accused of murdering Christian children too. At last, in 1290, Edward was forced by the outcries ofthe nation to banish them; he had tried very often to protect them, and is not to be blamed for their expulsion from England. The Jews did not return to England till about 1650, and even then ministers and lawyers petitioned Cromwell to expel them; but he was too noble, too grand a man, to do that.

Nearly a thousand, &c—at the conquest of Britain by the English, begun about A.D. 450.

Scots . . . . Saxon—It must be remembered that the Highlanders only were the real Scots; the Lowlanders were pure English, or Saxon, as the extract calls them. *See* "Green's History" in reference to the Scots, reign of Edw. I.

Observed—What is the object of this verb?

Marauding excursions—raids, as we often say.

Warders . . . march—that is, "Guardians" of the *boundary* between England and Wales; *warder* is the same as *guarder*; *march* is the same as *mark* or boundary.

Principle . . . . system—The principle meant here is, that if a vassal (or subject lord) was called to appear before the king and he refused, his lands were declared forfeited to the king and he himself a traitor.

Superiority—This superiority was obtained by King Offa and acknowledged by Welsh princes when there was a powerful king on the English throne; Llewellyn never denied it; but at this time the Welsh were excited and thought they could gain their independence. The immediate trouble that led to war was Llewellyn's refusal, under various pretexts, to come to Edward's coronation; he was summoned seven or eight times, and Edward even went to Chester, the nearest town to Llewyllyn's home, to satisfy him; but all to no purpose. Llewellyn was conquered and treated most generously by Edward. Five years after this, David, Llewellyn's brother, revolted and massacred an English garrison; and it was in the war that followed on this act that the Welsh prince was killed and Wales annexed to England.

Suzerain—one who is *above* or lord over another.

People—the verb must be supplied, and "Welsh" is the subject.

Indomitable—unconquerable.

Soothsayer—This word is formed from "sooth," truth; and "sayer," one who says;—a prophet.

Merlin—this was the great prophet and magician of the Welsh; he lived during the latter part of the 5th century. It was said he prophesied, that "when money became round, a Welsh prince should reign over Britain;" the first part had now been done, and the Welsh were trying to get the second part of the prophecy fulfilled by rebelling. *See* Mr. Tennyson's "Vivien," in the "Idylls of the King."

Inspired—Parse this word.

Bards—This story of Edward's treatment of the bards is not true; Edward was too wise and kind-hearted to do such a thing.

Cruelty—Mr. Freeman shows fully that Edward was the very opposite of cruel. Once he exclaimed, "*May* show mercy?—why, I will do that for a dog if he seeks my grace!" The old chronicler says of him: "This prince was slow to all manner of strife, discreet and wise, and true of his word." His motto was "Serva pactem—keep your word."

Office of bard—Explain carefully the author's meaning here.

Medium—means, or way: there were no newspapers in those days, and but few books.

Gray—an English poet born in 1716 and died in 1771. He wrote "Elegy in a Country Churchyard," and many fine "Odes."

Editors . . . . opposition—In our days the editors write articles in their papers on the doings of the government, or on

any other subject for the information of the people. Some papers always speak against what the government does, and so are said to be in *opposition*. So these Welsh bards always spoke against the government of Edward, and thus were in *opposition*, like the newspapers.

Seize . . . . wait—these verbs are in the subjunctive mood.

Ruthless—pitiless: the bard wishes that ruin may seize Edward and his army.

Conquest's crimson wing—Edward I. had made a *conquest* of Wales, and there was a great deal of bloodshed; hence the word *crimson*. The poet seems to represent victory (or conquest) as a bird (say an eagle) with bloody wings hovering over Edward's army, or perhaps perching on his standards, as poets sometimes say.

They mock . . . state—"idle state" means a mere useless show, or display of pomp; "mock the air" simply means that the display of power had no real strength in it to protect the descendants of Edward from the woes that awaited them, or Edward himself from the torments of a guilty conscience.

Hauberk—armour for *the neck*, but including the chest too; this armour was often made of links fitting closely together—*twisted mail*.

Virtues—bravery, honesty, truthfulness, mercy; a good statesman, lawyer and soldier.

Cambria—Wales.

Haughty—high, lofty. (French, "*haut*" —high.)

Conway—in the north of Wales.

Haggard—here means, sunken with grief: it is generally applied to the face—pale with grief, or careworn; not necessarily *thin*.

Fire—earnestness, eagerness.

Deep sorrows—The bard played notes that showed the deepest sorrow.

Desert cave—barren, deserted cave; the *caves* are in the cliff, and the *torrent* is the Conway; the echoes in the caves and the sighing among the branches of the oaks threaten vengeance on Edward.

Vocal no more—After the overthrow of Wales (Cambria's fatal day) the woods and caves no longer resounded with the music of the bards,—they were too sad to sing.

Hoel—a young Welsh hero slain in the battle of Cattraeth, in the year 570, in which the English of Northumberland defeated the Welsh.

Happily—modifies "assumed."

Instead of—The object of this preposition is the phrase following.

Share, &c.—The author means, that the Welsh have become completely mixed up with the English, and have done their share towards gaining whatever glory England has obtained in war or in peace; whereas, if Wales had gained its independence, it is so small a country that it would have been of no importance in Europe; just as a tree growing in the shade of a very large one, is poor and weak and of but little use.

THE TAKING OF EDINBURGH CASTLE.

Robert Bruce—*See* the "History of England"

Had nothing for it—could do nothing.

Tales of a Grandfather—This is the title of a work written by Sir Walter Scott (*See* "Death of Keeldar"), consisting of stories from Scottish history chiefly.

BRUCE AND THE SPIDER.

Eliza Cook, an English poetess, born in 1818, early began to write pieces for the magazines, etc., and in 1840 published a volume of poems that attracted considerable attention. In 1864 she published a new volume, called "New Echoes, and other Poems."

King Bruce—*See* the History of England. The story of "Bruce and the Spider" is very often told, though some people think it only a story. If true, it happened while Bruce was fleeing before his enemies for so many years after 1307.

Clew—a string or thread.

Cobweb—"*Cob*" or "*cop*" is the old name for "*spider*," and *web* means *something woven*.

Con over this strain—think over this song.

THE BATTLE OF CLONTARF.

English . . Ireland—in the reign of Henry II., A.D. 1172.

Scythian—The old Romans and Greeks gave the name of "Scythia" to that part of Europe and Asia unknown to them, —viz., all modern Russia in Europe and in Asia.

Iberian—The Iberians were a powerful tribe in ancient Spain.

Welsh—This word is an English, or Germanic, one, meaning "foreigner." The Germans at the present day call Italy "Welschland."

Celtic—This race of people when we find them first mentioned in history, inhabited all the British Islands, France, Spain, Portugal, Switzerland and Italy north of the Appenines. The Welsh, Highlanders, and Irish are the purest Celtic people now. We often see this name spelled "Keltic."

Danes—The people who lived on the eastern and south-eastern shores of the North Sea,—including Norway and Denmark, all went by the name of "Danes," being of the same race as the English. They were what we would now call pirates, for they roamed the seas, attacking merchant vessels, landing to plunder towns and villages, and then sailing back home in the fall to pass a merry winter. This sort of life was held in the highest honor among these fierce people; they called themselves "vikings," that is, "bay" or "sea-kings." About the beginning of the ninth century they began to entertain the idea, not only of attacking a country for plunder, but to settle down in it. We know that king Alfred had to give up to the Danes all England north of the Thames, except a very small corner; and the Frank king, Charles the Simple, had to give them all Normandy,—"Norman" or "Northman" being the very same as "Dane." They conquered and settled the coasts of Scotland and Ireland—Dublin being a Danish city.

Brien Borombe—"Brien Boru" is the common way of spelling this name.

Trophy—At present, a "trophy" is something carried away as proof of a victory. In old Greek times it was a pillar, or large stone or heap of stones, set up by the conquerors on the field of battle as an evidence of victory.

Tara—the old capital of Ireland, now only a ruin.

A young lady—If we may judge by the stories, this seems to have been in olden times a favorite way of testing the authority of the king and the law-fearing character of the people; for we hear of it in Scotland, England, several countries in Germany, Spain, etc. A wise plan is to read these stories, admire them, and *hope* they are true for the sake of all the parties concerned.

Tributary—*See* Chambers' Dictionary.

Principality—a country governed by a prince, but subject to another country.

Clontarf—three miles north-east of Dublin.

Good Friday—a day commemorating the crucifixion of Christ.

Being struck—qualifies "swords."

This foeman—namely, Sitric.

Pavilion—tent.

THE FOUR-LEAVED SHAMROCK

Samuel Lover, born in Dublin in 1797, began life as an artist; but although very successful in this occupation, he abandoned it for literature. "Legends and Tales Illustrative of Irish Character" was his first work; "Handy Andy" is perhaps his best known novel. He wrote many Irish songs,—"Rory O'More," "Molly Bawn," "Four-leaved Shamrock," "The May Dew," being some of his chief ones. He died in 1868.

Charmed leaves—*See* note under "A National Song." A four-leaved shamrock was supposed to confer magic powers on the possessor.

Spells—A "spell" is a form of words supposed to possess magical power,—giving the person who utters them more than human power.

Waste . . gold—That is, 'in turning things into diamonds,' etc.

Treasure . . sense—We get tired of gazing on mere jewels and gold,—we want something else.

Such triumph—turning things into diamonds, etc.

Noah's . . dove—*See* the account in the Bible.

Hope . . he—The poet says he would make those who were sorrowing have hope for a brighter and better future, and the miserable he would help to what was better.

NOTE.—Possessed of the four-leaved shamrock, the poet says he would not use the magic power thus given to him to make wealth for himself; but he would use it to do good to men.

LORD ULLIN'S DAUGHTER.

Thomas Campbell, one of Scotland's best poets, was born in 1777. He studied at Glasgow university, and on leaving, went to Edinburgh, where, in his twenty-second year, he published his best long poem, "The Pleasures of Hope"; his other lengthy poems are: "Gertrude of Wyoming," "O'Connor's Child," and "Constance." He wrote some fine short poems, the war-songs being especially good,—"Ye Mariners of England," "Hohenlinden," "The Battle of the Baltic," "Lochiel's Warning," etc. Mr. Campbell died in 1844.

Chieftain—the head of a clan among the Highlanders.

Bound—prepared, on the way, ready to start. *See* note on "Homeward bound" under "Parting with the Esquimaux."

Lochgyle—in the western Highlands.

Ulva—one of the inner group of the Hebrides.

Wight—a person.

Winsome—pretty.

Apace—quickly.

Wraith—a water spirit.

Prevailing—increasing.

THE VETERAN TAR.

A veteran tar—is an old sailor.

Ivy mantled—Ivy runs over houses in the old countries;—a thing rarely seen in Canada;—our winters are too cold. The ivy covers the cottage as a mantle, or cloak, covers a person.

Could not breathe—The old sailor, so long accustomed to the wind from the salt sea, and to the roar of the ocean, would not be happy away from them.

Wind—How is this pronounced here? Why? *See* note on "Wound" under "Death of Keeldar."

When rocked—Supply "he was" after "when."

Shrouds—The ropes running from the bulwarks of a vessel to the top of the masts in order to strengthen them.

Mignonette—min-yun-ét. Everybody knows this sweet little flower.

Freaked—streaked, spotted.

Models—In ship-carpentry a "model" is a little vessel, or rather a half of a little vessel, from the shape of which the large one is to be built. In the poem it means only 'a little ship.'

Camperdown—a village on the coast of Holland off which, in 1797, the British admiral, Duncan, gained a splendid victory over the fleet of the Dutch—then allies of France.

Horatio Nelson—England's greatest naval hero, was born in 1758. He entered the navy when only eleven years old; as he grew up he advanced rapidly in the service,—being remarkable for his attention to his duty and for his great ability. As captain of a man-of-war he did excellent service in the West Indies and in the Mediterranean. In 1796, being then next in command under the admiral Sir John Jervis, he captured with his own vessel two of the enemy, both very much larger vessels than his own, in the battle off cape St. Vincent. In 1798 he was sent in command of a fleet to the Mediterranean to watch the French fleet; he followed it to Egypt and utterly destroyed it at the battle of Aboukir at the mouth of the Nile. His next great deed was the capture in 1801 of the Danish fleet at Copenhagen. The French were now meditating an invasion of England and Nelson was put in command of the Channel fleet to watch them; he attacked Boulogne and destroyed a great many transports. Then having heard that the Spanish and French fleets had united and gone to the West Indies, he pursued them there, but returned in all haste to England on finding the enemy had again left for Europe (1803); soon he heard of them being at Cadiz and he left England, met the hostile fleet at cape Trafalgar and completely defeated it, taking twenty-three of the ships; but he was killed during the battle. He was buried in St. Paul's cathedral, amid the tears of the whole nation.

Charts—maps.

Soundings—measurings of the depth of the water.

Anson—George Anson, another famous English admiral, was born in 1697. He entered the navy early and, rising rapidly, he was appointed, in 1739, to the command of an expedition of five men-of-war against the Spanish colonies in South America. He lost two of his ships in going round Cape Horn; he staid at Juan Fernandez some weeks to recruit the health of his men, and then with only two vessels, sailed up the

coast, capturing prizes, and burning the town of Paita; then he started across the Pacific, and lost his companion vessel in mid-ocean, but he sailed on, reached China, and then turning back a short way he captured a Spanish treasure ship and sailed home around the Cape of Good Hope, he and his crew all being rich. He afterwards rose to the highest post in the navy, and died in 1762. *See* note on 'Southern Ocean" under "The Buccaneers."

Cook—*See* note under "History of Vancouver Island."

Bligh—Admiral William Bligh (bly), born in 1753, entered the navy and, before having command of a vessel of his own, made a voyage around the world with Captain Cook. In 1786 he was sent with the ship "Bounty" to Tahiti to get bread-fruit trees for Jamaica. On his way back the crew mutinied in consequence of his great harshness, and set him and some others adrift in a boat with no compass or chart. After terrible suffering Bligh and the rest of the boat's crew arrived safely at Timor Island after sailing in the open boat over 4,000 miles. Some time afterwards he again went for the bread-fruit trees and was successful. Being again in command of a man-of-war, he used his crew so badly that they ran the vessel into a port in France, with which country England was then at war, and surrendered it. In 1806 Bligh was made governor of New South Wales; here again he acted so tyrannically that the authorities arrested him, and he was sent back to England where he died in 1817.

Coral—the rock formed by the coral insect. This insect gathers from the water the materials which it hardens into a crust around it; it then dies and another insect builds its house upon that one. *See* the note on "Coral" under "The Lament of the Peri for Hinda."

Storm-stones—meteoric stones.

Quay—key;—a wharf.

Raw thirteen — "Raw" means here "ignorant." *See* note on "raw material" under "Ship Building in New Brunswick."

He took him to the sea — "Him" should be "himself"; we would rather say "he betook himself," etc.

Merchantman—a trading vessel, not a man-of-war.

Isles—the object of "knew."

In endless summer—Read "The West Indian Islands."

St. Lucie—usually written St. Lucia,—one of the West Indies; it is to be pronounced here 'saint-luce.'

Palmy Trinidad—Why "palmy"? *See* the geography.

Stooped victory—Among the old Greeks "Victory" was a winged goddess who placed a wreath, an emblem of success, on the head of the conqueror. So in this poem victory flies down from the shrouds and crowns the English sailor, —the English having been almost always victorious over the French on sea.

Line—the equator.

Winged fishes—flying fish; a fish having long, broad front fins, by means of which it can sustain itself in the air about half a minute; the fins do not move when the fish is flying.

Frost rocks, etc.—"Frost" is the subject of "rocks." Explain this expression.

Queue—It was the custom in the latter part of last century to wear the hair in this style. Pronounce like the name of the letter "q."

Sea-mew—a species of gull.

Smith—"Sir Sidney Smith," one of the most daring, active and gallant of England's admirals, was born in 1764. He entered the navy and was made captain at twenty; after serving in the Swedish navy with high honor, he joined the English again. A prisoner in France two years, he was afterwards sent against the French in Syria, captured a fleet of gunboats, repulsed Napoleon from Acre, helped Abercromby to defeat the French at Alexandria in 1801, and then returned to England highly honored by every one. After the close of the war he exerted himself in England, France and elsewhere to have the slave trade put down. He died in 1840.

Bags of sand--to serve as a fortification.

Sound—the strait between the island of Zealand and Sweden.

Cronberg--a town and fortification in Denmark. *See* note above on "Nelson"; read also "Battle of the Baltic."

AN INCIDENT AT BRUGES.

William Wordsworth, one of the greatest of English poets, was born in 1770. After graduating at Cambridge he visited France and sympathised heartily with the cause of the people. On his return he published his first work, "Descriptive Sketches"; shortly after this he was enabled to settle down quietly to the life of a poet. Along with Cole

ridge he published, in 1798, "Lyrical Ballads"; in 1814 appeared the "Excursion," said to be his best poem. "The White Doe of Ryistone," "Peter Bell," "The Prelude," are others of his many writings. Wordsworth was an ardent lover of everything in nature, and he loved man as well, hating every form of tyranny and oppression. In his poems he aimed at using simple language. His home was chiefly among the lakes of Westmoreland, the scenery of which was ever his delight; Rydal Mount, near lake Windermere, was the name of the place to which he removed in 1813. He died in 1850 and was buried not far away, at Grasmere.

Bruges—a town in Belgium, formerly very prosperous, but owing to the dreadful persecutions about the year 1600 it began to decline; hence the poet speaks of its "grass grown pavement." Lace and linen are largely manufactured there still; decimal arithmetic is said to have had its origin in this city. The Flemish call its name "Brugge"–broog-geh; the spelling in the text is the French form but has to be sounded in two syllables,—brü-gez, the "g" like "z" in "azure." The name signifies "bridges,"—the river being crossed by very many bridges.

Convent—*See* Chambers' Dictionary.

There heard we—The object of "heard" is "harp." Wordsworth and his sister had paid a visit to Belgium and Germany.

Flung—qualifies "shade."

A harp that tuneful—"That" is the subject of "made," "prelude" being the object.

Prelude—a piece played before the beginning of a song, or other piece of music.

Measure—It will be best merely to define this word as 'the style or character of the song.'

Simple . . to tell—"To tell" is said to be used absolutely in this phrase; but words may be supplied, as—"if I am," etc.

Fit . . throng—the tune and words being merry; though such things we would hardly expect to meet with in a gloomy building.

Pinnacle . . spire—What is the difference between these two words?

Quivered . . fire—The "innocuous" (harmless) fire is the ruddy light of the setting sun, and as it was reflected from the tower it seemed to quiver.

Where we stood—down on the ground; and thus they could not see the sun.

Iron grate—before the nun's window.

Not always . . born—The poet says that it is not always foolish to be sorry for those who are not sorry for themselves, nor is pity for them useless;—he felt sorrow and pity for the nun who seemed to be gay.

Self solaced dove—Wordsworth compares the nun to an imprisoned dove; and she comforts herself with the music.

A feeling sanctified, etc.—The feeling of pity for the nun was made deeper and purer to the poet by seeing a tear fall from his sister who was with him. It is always good to have the feeling of pity aroused.

Less tribute—"Tribute" is something given as a duty or right to another; the "tear" was given to the nun, because she did not enjoy liberty.

THE BAFFLED TRAVELLER.

Squire—In England the country gentlemen,—land owners—are termed "squires."

Passport—a paper given by the proper authorities granting permission to travel in the country of the authorities who give it. It is but little used now in Europe except in times of war.

Design—harm, mischief.

They—the people of England.

Phlegm—It is not possible to give an accurate definition of this word; sluggishness,—dull indifference by nature with a mixture of satisfaction with one's self or determination not to be disturbed, approach the meaning. But like so many other words its signification is best learned by comparing several passages in which it occurs.

Policy—plan, custom.

Mynheer—mine-heer;—sir.

Seven United Provinces—That is, modern Holland. Originally Holland was composed of seven provinces—Holland, Zeeland, Utrecht (oo-trekt), Gelderland, Overyssel (over-Isel), Friesland, and Gröningen (grun-ing-en); some more have since been added.

Commerce—Holland has always been noted for its extensive commerce. Louis XIV. of France called it 'a nation of shop-keepers.' *See* the geography.

Post—station for troops, etc.

Requested the honor—Notice the *very* polite manner of the Frenchman. In the last three lines of this paragraph notice the blunder in the use of the pronouns he, his, him;—they refer at one time to the traveller, and at another to the sentinel. Rewrite the paragraph using the pronouns without danger of confusion.

On his failing—"On" connects "entreated" and "failing."

Commandant—Accent the last syllable strongly.

Monsieur le, etc.—mus-s'you (like "you" in "young"); "le"—like "lu" in "lucky";—*Monsieur* means Mr. or sir; *le*, the. But in this phrase they cannot well be translated; we would say "the commander"; the French add the other word from politeness. We have the same form in "his worship, the mayor"; "his honor, the judge," etc.

Ma foi—mah fwah;—literally, *my faith*,—dear me, indeed.

C'est un négociant—sate u(n) nā-go-see-ah(n);—'he is a merchant.'

Un bourgeois—u(n) boor-zwah ("z" as in "azure");—a common fellow,—literally, a *burgher*.

Comédie—com-ā-deé;—the play.

Allons—al-lo(n);—away, be off.

No gentleman—At the time when France tried to rule all Europe every profession but a soldier's was despised.

Grand Monarque—mon-ark;—Louis XIV.; he became king in 1642 when five years old, and reigned till his death in 1715. He was a perfectly absolute monarch, and aimed at ruling over all Europe; his reign was one of almost continual war, in which his armies were in the main successful; but in the "War of the Spanish Succession" (*See* note under "Taking of Gibraltar"), from 1702 till 1713, France was completely crushed by the allies under the English Duke of Marlborough. *See* note on "Duke of Marlboro'" under "The Battle of Blenheim."

Arms—war,—being a soldier.

Vive le roi—veev leh rwah;—(long) live the king!

Chasseurs—shas-sûr;—light-horsemen,—cavalry.

Quality—rank, position, office.

Corporal—*See* note under "Gallantry of a Marine."

Dragoon—*See* Chambers' Dictionary.

Potsdam—an important city in Prussia, on the Havel river; it is a royal residence, and a principal station for the army. Alexander Humboldt was born there.

Frederick—This king is usually styled "Frederick the Great"; he was one of the greatest military geniuses of modern times. In 1740, when he was 28 years old, he became king and thenceforth bent all his energies to strengthen his kingdom internally, and to enlarge its size. He encouraged arts, sciences, manufactures, learning; he organized the best army in Europe. He was often at war, and at one time, during the Seven Years' War (*See* History of England) from 1755 to 1763, he had against him Russia, Austria, Saxony and France; but he came out victorious at last, England having given him very important assistance. He died in 1786, leaving Prussia one of the great powers of Europe.

Military . . me—This was only too true of England during the "Seven Years' War," at least as far as Europe was concerned; but England had good soldiers and money; so Frederick furnished a good general, the Duke of Brunswick, and England sent money and troops to Frederick.

Barriers—The meaning of this word here is "frontier," because people found the road into Saxony *barred* against them by the soldiers who examined every one before allowing them to pass on. *See* note on "Embarrassed" under "The Norwegian Colonies in Greenland."

First warrior-Frederick II. (the Great). The Saxons had been severely handled by Frederick; hence the reason of the sentinel's words.

Sacrificed at the shrine—The meaning is that, all these men were killed because Prussia was ambitious of conquering more territory,—or, in satisfying Prussia's ambition. A "shrine" was originally a coffin, or chest, containing the body of a dead saint; it was usually kept in churches, and people would kneel round it, and very often bestow large gifts upon the church, or upon this shrine, as they said. Hence the word gradually obtained the meaning of *altar*, upon which, in olden times, bloody or other sacrifices were consumed. So in the text, the ambition of Prussia is regarded as a god, and those slain in battle are called the *sacrifices* to this god.

Poland—*See* the geography.

Starost—in Poland, a nobleman possessing a castle or domain conferred on him for life.

HERMANN, THE DELIVERER OF GERMANY.

Tiberius—tī-bé-ree-us—the step-son of the Roman emperor Augustus; he was for some time commander of the Roman army along the Rhine. On the death of Augustus in A.D. 14, Tiberius became emperor.

Quintilius—quin-tīl-ee-us.

Extorted—Latin, *torqueo*—to twist or wring—as if money were *wrung out* of them. This was the usual way with the Romans; and when a general had conquered a country he came home to Rome enormously wealthy, no matter how deeply he may have been in debt before. The Romans stirred up wars for this very purpose of plunder.

Pettifoggers—a class of lawyers who undertake only little cases, no matter how mean or tricky they are.

Fasces—fás-sees—these were always carried before the magistrates; the axe representing the power of the magistrates to punish by death, and the rods to punish otherwise.

Symbol—The German free-men were never punished corporally, though slaves were; these fasces were a sign to them that they were in the power of others who could treat them as they saw fit—a thing most galling to the high-spirited Germans.

Inly chafed—As chafing hurts the body, so these things hurt their mind—angered them.

Hostages—The Germans promised to obey the Romans; but the latter, fearing that the promise might be broken, took the children of the German nobles to Rome, so that, if the Germans rebelled, these children would be put to death if the Romans chose; as the parents would not like this, they would try to make their fellow-countrymen keep their promise, so that their children might be safe.

Yoke—The yoke is an emblem of servitude,—as an ox is *yoked* when serving man.

Draining, etc.—taking from the Germans the treasure and property of all kinds, and making the young men become Roman soldiers.

Dissimulation—pretending one thing while meaning another.

Napoleon—(*See* History of England);—the great army he took into Russia, for instance, was largely composed of Germans.

When the Romans subdued a country they made numbers of the young men become Roman soldiers, but would hardly ever allow them to stay near home, for fear that when these men had learned the Roman way of fighting they would rebel and beat their masters.

To lay, etc.—this infinitive, and "to make," and "to inflame," are in apposition to "[illegible]*se*."

Altars and hearths—that is, their religion, home, possessions—everything dear to them.

Unanimously—Latin, "*unus*"—one; "*animus*"—the mind; with one mind.

Woden—or Odin, as the Danes called him; our "Wednesday" is "Woden's day."

Peoples—The plural of *people* means different *races* or *nations*.

Legion—a division in the Roman army, varying from 4000 to 6000 men.

Couriers—literally, *runners*—messengers.

Segestes—sĕ-gés-tees.

Cherusci—cher-ŭs-ci; their country lay along both sides of the Weser.

Principality—a country ruled by a *prince*.

Lippe—lip-pe—("e" as "u" in "cut"). *See* map of Western Germany.

Entrenched—literally, "in a trench"; but here the word means that they formed some sort of fortifications, of trees, etc.

Trophies—proofs or signs of victory.

Marbod—He had been a hostage at Rome and was educated by Augustus. He extended his kingdom from Bavaria nearly as far as Hungary. At a later time he was suspected by the other German princes, driven from his country, and died at Rome.

Marcomanni—that is, "men of the mark" or boundary. *See* note on "Warders of the March," under "Conquest of Wales."

Barbarians—The Romans and Greeks used to call all other nations "barbarians." Thus, in the Acts of the Apostles, the inhabitants of Melita, where Paul was shipwrecked, are called barbarians.

THE VILLAGE GARRISON.

Thirty years' war—In the year 1618 a war broke out in Germany regarding the crown of Bohemia; in a few years it became a war between catholics and protestants, involving protestant Denmark and catholic Spain; then, when the fortune of the protestants was lowest, the renowned Gustavus Adolphus king of Sweden joined them with his splendid troops, and beat their opponents again and again. After the death of Gustavus at the battle of Lutzen the success of the war was, for some years, pretty evenly balanced between the two sides. At last catholic France, wishing to humble completely the power of Austria, joined the protestants; thus giving them a decided superiority over their enemies. After doing untold injury in every form to both catholic and protestant Germany, and from which the country has not even yet recovered, the war was brought to an end by the Treaty of Westphalia in 1648.

Gonsalvo de Cordova—This is not the celebrated general of the days of Ferdinand and Isabella.

Palatinate—a division of Western Germany; it lay partly west of the Rhine between that river and the Moselle, and partly east of the Rhine south of the Neckar. *See* Chambers' Dictionary.

To possess himself—"Himself" is here a pure reflexive pronoun,—not the object of "possess." *See* Abbott's "How to Parse."

Ogersheim—o-gurs-hime.

Mannheim—man-hime. *See* the map.

Spur of the moment—To do a thing 'on the spur of the moment' is to do it without taking or having time to think about it,—as if the very instant "spurred" on to the act.

Herald—*See* Chambers' Dictionary.

Hero—here merely the subject of the story.

Military honors—not being prisoners, keeping their weapons and what belonged to them, etc.

At the point of the sword—namely, he would have to fight for it.

Drawbridge—As many of the walled towns had deep, broad ditches around them, a bridge was necessary for the people to cross by. This bridge was fastened to the side next the walls by huge hinges, so that the outer end could be drawn upward and backward by means of huge chains which ran from near the top of the wall to the outer end of the bridge.

Caricature—*See* Chambers' Dictionary. A caricature must always preserve the likeness in some way of the person or thing represented, however absurd or exaggerated the whole thing may be.

Spanish gravity—It is by no means certain that the Spaniards are graver by nature than other people. But around the court and among those who imitated the court, a gravity of demeanor and a fixed form of doing everything sprang up, so that a person would rather die than break through it. Though not so bad now as formerly, yet the king and his courtiers have fixed things to do during certain hours in the day, and these must be done and no other.

FOUNDING OF AIX-LA-CHAPELLE.

Charlemange—Charles the Great,—for such is the meaning of this name,—the great king of the Franks, was born in A.D. 742, and became king in 771; his dominions were, all Germany south of the Maine, Switzerland and France; he extended his conquests to the North Sea and east to Hungary. In A.D. 800 he was crowned emperor of Rome, or of the West; this added Italy to his territory. He died in 814. He did a great deal of good to his rude subjects, encouraged learning by bringing learned men from England and elsewhere into his country, improved agriculture, and above all made very many wise laws.

Pupils must bear in mind that Charlemagne was not a French emperor, but a German one; his capital was not Paris or any city in modern France, but in Germany; Neustria, or modern France, (for in his time the name "France" was unknown) was one of his provinces; his own people were the Franks,—Germans.

Champion—literally, a warrior—the sense it is used in here. At the present time it means more, 'one who fights for another who is weaker, or who defends the cause of another.

Aix-la-Chapelle—ā-lah-shap-él. The German name of this city is "Aachen"—ah-h'yen. The present city was built

in 1353: some say that the old city existed long before Charlemagne's days, and even that he was born there. The Romans knew of the hot baths at the place—hence the name "Aix"—a corruption of the Latin *aqua*, water. Aachen has several hot sulphur springs, and two cold ones of another mineral character. Baden-Baden, Spa, and other cities in that region have also these springs. *See* the geography. In Canada we have sulphur springs at St. Catharines, Paris, Preston and other places.

Following—company.

Doe—Give the opposite gender of this word and of "stag."

Mother of God—The Roman catholics call the Virgin Mary by this name.

Haroun al Raschid—That is, 'Aaron the Wise,'—one of the most renowned of the Saracen caliphs, or princes; his capital was Bagdad on the Euphrates, but his dominions included Egypt, Arabia, Persia, Turkestan and other Tartar countries; he was as renowned for his love of learning, his laws and his magnificence, as he was for his great power.

Paladins—warriors, nobles,—especially a number of very renowned ones that Charlemagne kept around him.

AN INCIDENT AT RATISBON.

Robert Browning, one of the leading poets of England at the present day, was born in 1812 and educated at London University. In 1836 "Paracelsus" his first work, appeared. Since then he has written a great deal: "The Ring and the Book" is pretty well known. "Fifine at the Fair," "Red Cotton Night-cap Country," are two of his latest works. Mr. Browning is not very popular, and many think never will be.

Stormed—"Storming" means to capture a place by a sudden rush of the soldiers.

Ratisbon—In 1809 Napoleon captured this city.

Napoleon—*See* the note under "The Natural Bridge."

Prone brow—Napoleon's head was very large, and flat on the top; the forehead projected somewhat over the eyes,—hence the term "prone."

Oppressive with its mind—Napoleon was a man of very great ability, or *mind;* the mind has its seat in the brain; and the poet says that Napoleon's mind was so great that it *oppressed* his brain,—it was a great load, as it were, for the brow to carry.

Lannes—John;—John Lannes (born in 1769), duke of Montebello and Marshal of France, began life as a dyer; but abandoning this occupation he entered the army, where his abilities procured him rapid advancement. He served in very many of Napoleon's campaigns in Italy and elsewhere, contributing very greatly by his bravery and skill to gain the battle of Austerlitz. He was mortally wounded at the battle of Essling in 1809.

Let once, etc.—'If my army leader should,' etc.

Could suspect—Supply 'that he was wounded,' or some such.

Flag-bird—The eagle was adopted by Napoleon as his emblem, because he pretended he was the right successor of the old Roman emperors;—the standards of Rome always bore a gilded eagle on the top.

Where I, etc.—The boy was an ensign, or standard bearer; he had set up the eagle-flag in the market-square, and came as a messenger to tell Napoleon.

Vans—wings. Explain this phrase.

As sheathes—"Film" is the subject of "sheathes."

Quick—the *living* part. So the expression in the Bible "the quick and the dead,"—the living and the dead. The phrase 'touched to the quick' means here, *aroused, angered.* In this as in many other similar phrases the sensations of the body are transferred to the mind. On pricking the skin no sensation is felt till it is pierced through; it is, as it were, *dead;* but the moment the skin is pierced pain is instantly and sharply felt,—the *live* or *quick* part has been reached. The words of Napoleon to the mind of the boy were as some sharp instrument piercing through the skin.

Sire—a term of reverence applied to kings, etc.; it is a contraction of *senior,* an elder,—old age being deemed worthy of reverence. *Sir* is another form of the same word.

THE DOWNFALL OF POLAND.

Campbell—*See* the sketch under "Lord Ullin's Daughter." The extract is from Campbell's best poem, "The Pleasures of Hope."

Leagued oppression—Russia, Prussia and Austria leagued together in 1772 to divide Poland between them;—each took certain provinces; in 1793 another division took place, and the remaining provinces of the kingdom were shared in 1795.

Pandours—light infantry soldiers in the Austrian service.

Hussar—*See* Chambers' Dictionary.

Her dread—"Her" refers to "Oppression."

Tumultuous horror—Probably this line means that the army inspired the beholder with a feeling of horror as it went past on its dreadful errand—tumult and confusion being inseparable from the movements of a large body of wild soldiery.

Warsaw—the province of Warsaw, not the city.

Last champion—Thaddeus Kosciusko (kos-see-oos-ko). This renowned Polish general and patriot, born in 1756, after studying in military schools for some time, entered the Polish army, but soon went to America where he served with Washington during the American Revolution. He returned to Poland in 1791, and in a war with Russia greatly distinguished himself; he left the country on the surrender of the king to the Russians, and went to France. In two or three years the Poles revolted from Russia and placed Kosciusco at the head of their army. With only 4,000 men, part of whom had no other weapons than scythes and spears, and without artillery, Kosciusko defeated 12,000 Russians; afterwards with 9,000 men he drove the enemy from the province of Warsaw. But at last overwhelmed by numbers, he was defeated, wounded and taken prisoner at the battle of Maceiowice in 1794. After being kept a prisoner for some time, he was released by the emperor Paul who gave him an estate in Poland. Napoleon tried in vain to induce Kosciusko to join him in his ambitious plans. This noble patriot died in Switzerland in 1817.

For the meaning of "champion"—*see* the note under "Founding of Aix-la-Chapelle."

Wide . . laid—The construction is 'a waste of ruin laid wide o'er,' etc.

Hand on high—Kosciusko calls upon God to rescue his country from the enemy.

Dread name—"Dread" has not quite the same meaning here as "dreadful";—it is rather more in the sense of *inspiring with awe, reverence.* The meaning of the line is that 'for the sake of their country the Poles will fight till they die.'

Rampart-heights—the hills. What difference would the omission of the hyphen make?

Few—*See* the sketch of Kosciusko above.

Horrid—causing horror or fear in others.

Watchword—their motto,—by the sentiment of which they intend to guide their conduct. *See* the dictionary for another meaning.

Notes—Taken in connection with the next line, "notes" may mean the signal for attack given by the trumpet, or by the bells; possibly it may mean the roar of the guns—a much better idea.

Omnipotent to charm—We all know the powerful effect music produces on people; in the army this is taken advantage of, not only when troops are marching, but when they are advancing to an attack. The roar of the guns, and the smell of the powder in battle excite the soldiers and urge them onward in the fight.

Tocsin—*See* Chambers' Dictionary.

Sarmatia—the old name for a division of Europe including not only Poland but also a large part of Russia. "Sarmatia" is here represented as a warrior-woman.

Without a crime—Poland would have been a powerful kingdom to-day if the people had been united among themselves; it was their continual disputes that led to the interference of other nations, and the ruin of the country. Mr. Campbell, the poet, was greatly excited at the fall of Poland; he would wander about the city for days, with a most dejected look, speaking to all he knew about Poland, and urging the necessity of England's interfering.

Shattered spear—That is, her power was gone, her armies defeated. "Spear" is the object of "dropped."

Kosciusko fell—He was wounded, not killed.

Tumultuous murder—Compare this with the "Burning of Moscow."

Prague—No doubt the poet means "Praga," a town in Poland on the Vistula, opposite to Warsaw, with which it is connected by a bridge.

Storm—the fight.

Conscious Nature—The poet says that Nature sympathised in the misery of Poland, and showed her sympathy by an earthquake and by meteors.

Departed spirits—That is, the spirits of those who are dead,—*departed* from *life*.

Mighty dead—those who were brave, and great, and good when alive.

Marathon—In the year B.C. 490 the Persians invaded Greece with an army of 400,000 men, it is said; but they were met by the Greeks with about 12,000 men,—all Athenians but 1100, and defeated at Marathon, a plain and village on the coast north-east of Athens.

Leuctra — luke-trĕ; — a small city in Bœotia—the northern part of modern Greece,—where, in B.C. 371, the Thebans (of the city of Thebes) defeated the Spartans (of Sparta), thus freeing their country from the rule of the latter.

Friends of the world—because those who fought at these places fought, not for empire, but for freedom; —such being the friends of the world because they fought for what is good for the world.

Restore your swords—The poet does not ask the "mighty dead" to give back to the world their swords that won victory for freedom; but to rise themselves from the graves and to lead on the armies of the living, who are fighting for the same object that they fought.

Tears of blood—As Sarmatia is represented as a woman, the "tears" shed will be the blood that the people have shed in fighting for their freedom.

Atone—take vengeance for.

Tell—This hero of Switzerland, who is said to have lived during the former part of the 14th century, took the chief part in freeing his country from the Austrian rule. Those most capable of judging say that there never was such a person; and that the deeds attributed to him are related of other heroes in every country in Europe. It is a very great pity that these learned men cannot allow us to enjoy our fine old stories in peace, without telling us they are all fables!

Bruce-*See* "Taking of Edinburgh Castle."

THREE SCENES IN THE TYROL.

Inn—Look up the geographical names on the map.

Buttress—*See* Chambers' Dictionary.

Solstein—sol-stine;—one of the peaks of the Rhœtian (rē-she-an) Alps in Tyrol.

Precipice—*See* note under "Taking of Gibraltar."

Chamois—*See* the dictionary.

Maximilian—an emperor of Germany, who was contemporary with Henry VII. and Henry VIII. of England.

Abbot—the head of a monastery; it is a Hebrew word meaning "father."

Wiltau — wil-tou; — a small town in Tyrol.

Cell—the private room of a monk;—generally very small and scantily furnished.

Passing—passing away from earth,—dying.

Zyps of Zyrl—tsips, tsirl.

Outlaw— literally, one who is *outside of the law*,—whom the law does not protect, and whom any one may kill or injure. *See* the dictionary.

Crampons- iron hooks bound to the feet to assist in climbing.

Kaiser—kī-zer;—the German word for "emperor"; it is a form of the word "*Cæsar*." The emperors of Germany were in reality only *kings* of Germany and *emperors* of Rome. When in the year 800 Charlemagne (*See* note under "Founding of Aix-la-Chapelle") became emperor of Rome, he adopted the title of the old Roman emperors, *Cæsar*. In 1805 the title of "Emperor of Rome" was dropped. In 1870 King William of Prussia was made emperor of Germany.

Providence-God is called "Providence" because he *looks forward* and makes preparations for what man, etc., will need in a future time.

Hallooer, etc.—hal-lō-er fun hō-en-fel-sen.

Pension—an allowance given yearly by a government to persons who have been of service to the government.

Hapsburg—the name of a small town in Switzerland, a descendant of the lord of which became emperor;—the family still holds the throne of Austria.

Innsbruck—Inns-brick (nearly).

Melée—confusion.

Premature—*See* the dictionary.
For other—"For" connects "can mistake" and "other."
Charles V.—He was the grandson and successor of Maximilian; and also the grandson of Ferdinand and Isabella of Spain. Born in 1500, he became king of Spain on Ferdinand's death in 1516, and was chosen emperor of Germany in 1519 on the death of Maximilian. His dominions embraced the New World, Spain, Holland and Belgium, Italy, Austria, and Germany. During his reign the Protestant Reformation took place in Germany. His reign was a stormy one. He resigned his crown and retired to Spain where he died in 1558.
Sluth-hound—blood hound.
Maurice of Saxony—There were several of this name; but the one meant was duke of Saxony from 1541 to 1553. He was a professed Protestant, but for his private advantage he joined the Catholics, receiving from the emperor large additions to his estates. He however quarrelled with the emperor, forcing on him a treaty to the advantage of the Protestants; war soon broke out again, during the course of which Maurice died.
Star of Austria—This is a term from astrology. It was believed that when a person was born, the star that was the principal one in the heavens, or was "in the ascendant" as it was termed, at the time would influence the character and destiny in life; each star had a particular influence attributed to it. For instance, the star Jupiter's influence produced a merry, joyous person; — whence our word "jovial,"—*Jove* being another form of *Jupiter*. So in the text "the star of Austria" was *always* in the ascendant, had the rule or chief place, and so Austria,—that is, the House of Austria,—was always fortunate.
Bonaparte—*See* note under the "Natural Bridge."
Troublesome nest—After the peace of Vienna Napoleon sent three armies at once against Tyrol; these were defeated and reinforcements had to be sent before the people were conquered. Andreas Hofer was the great leader of the Tyrolese; he was captured and shot by Napoleon's orders. Two or three previous invasions had been defeated.
Innthal—in-tahl;—that is, 'the valley of the Inn.' Our word "dale" is another form of "thal."
Prutz—proots;—a town in Tyrol.
Eyries—air-ee;—eagle's nest; literally, an *eggery*.
Living wings . . France—*See* note on "Flag-bird" under "An Incident at Ratisbon."
Wayward—*See* the dictionary.
Silence—The full form is—'There is silence.'
With its kind—with spirits like itself.
Countersigned — answered. *See* the dictionary.
Noch nicht—The sound of "ch" here cannot be well represented by letters; it is something like that of "k," only breathed out.
Serpent-length—The invading army looks like a huge serpent winding around the base of the cliff. The "serpent" is the *creeping* animal.
Uncoiled—When a serpent is uncoiled it cannot spring on its prey.
Sorrowful—'It is sorrowful that,' etc.
League with the serpent—By "serpent" is here meant Satan.
Writhe—twist or crawl into stealthily like a serpent. Give another meaning.
Titan—the name of a novel by the German writer Richter.

NOTE.—In this extract the author uses the present tense of the verbs where we naturally expect the past tense. He does it in order to bring the scene more clearly before us,—just as if we were looking on.

THE SIEGE OF HENSBURGH.

Emperor—*See* "Conrad" below.
Rood—the old English word for "cross,"—the latter being French.
Eke—also.
Hensburgh—a town in western Austria.
Squire—In old feudal times a squire was a young noble that entered the household of another older noble, in order to learn the duties of a knight. When he had learned these he was made a knight either by the king or a noble, and then became anxious to distinguish himself in battle.
Dight—clothed, ready.
Summons—In feudal times the king had the power to summon his nobles

to follow him to the wars.

Sheen—brightness ;—the same as *shine*.

Conrad—Conrad III., emperor of Germany or more properly emperor of the the Romans ; he reigned from 1138 to 1152. It was during his reign that the wars of the Guelphs and Ghibellines began. *See* below.

Tell-tale breeze—What would it tell?

Leaguer—besieger ;—" lay " is from the same root.

Guelph—In mediæval times there were two parties in the German, or Roman, empire and Italy; one, the *Guelphs*, supported the Pope, who wished the emperor to have no control over Italy; the other, the Ghibellines, wanted the emperor to have full authority over Italy. There were long and bloody wars between these parties.

In the poem "Guelph" is used for "Guelphs" — for Hensburgh was a Guelph city.

Pale Hunger . . fare—Explain.

Braverie—ornaments, etc.

Meed—reward.

Tire—for "attire,"—dress.

Sire—*See* the note under "An Incident at Ratisbon."

WILLIAM TELL.

William Tell—*See* the note under "The Downfall of Poland."

Altorf—the chief town of the canton of Uri (oō-rē). Tell's feat, the story says, took place in the year 1307.

Gessler—guess-ler.

Austrian power—Switzerland did not belong to the dukes of Austria ; it was one of the countries forming the German empire; but when the dukes of Austria became also emperors of Germany, they tried, the story says, to force the Swiss to take the oath of allegiance (*See* note under "Conquest of Peru") to the emperors, not as lords of Germany, but as dukes of Austria. This the Swiss resisted ; and in the war that followed at last, gained their independence of the empire itself.

Needed you—It will be noticed that Gessler is made to use "you" here ; in his other speeches he uses "thou," etc. It has been only for the last three hundred years or so that the English people have used "you," etc., for "thou," etc.

THE GEYSERS OF ICELAND.

The Right Honorable Frederick Temple Blackwood, Earl of Dufferin, was born in 1826, being the only son of baron Dufferin. He was educated at Oxford, succeeding to his father's title in 1841. Soon after this he entered public life. In 1859 he made a voyage in a yacht to Iceland, and published a narrative of the trip in 1860 under the title of "Letters from High Latitudes." In 1860 he was sent to Syria to enquire into the massacre of Christians there, and performed his part so well that on his return he was knighted. He afterwards filled several important offices under the government; in 1872 he was appointed governor-general of Canada. He has made himself extremely popular among us by the deep interest he has always taken in everything concerning Canada, by his untiring efforts to advance its prosperity, and by his kindness and affability to all. Earl Dufferin has written other books beside the above one.

Geyser—gī-ser ("g" hard); literally, *the gusher*,—being of the same root as *gush*. See note on "Pool" below.

Daylight—*See* the note on "Iceland" under "Norwegian Colonies in Greenland."

Brewed—Do people *brew* coffee?

Strokr—strōk-r. It will be noticed that the writer speaks of the strokr as if it were a living animal.

Rise—Earl Dufferin is joking here ;—*rise* may be taken in two senses,—a rising or lifting up of the water, and, a joke, as people say often 'to take a *rise* out of a person'; the latter has a touch of slang in it.

Shrine—*See* the note under "The Baffled Traveller."

Pilgrims—those who came from a distance to worship at the shrine of a saint.

Latent energies—those powers that are not in activity,—*lying hid* as it were. The geyser is very powerful; but sometimes it is at rest, thus preventing us from seeing its power; at

times it shows what it can do and this makes us sure that it is strong.

Pool—The Great Geyser rises out of a circular basin, or bowl, at the top of a little hillock; the diameter of the basin is 56 feet one way, and 46 another. In the centre is a pipe 78 feet deep, and from 8 to 10 feet in diameter. The inside of the basin is perfectly smooth; it is usually filled with beautifully clear, boiling water. The column of water and steam is said sometimes to shoot up over 200 feet. Steam, in whatever way produced, is the cause of the eruptions of the geysers.

There are geysers also in New Zealand, and in the valley of the Yellowstone in the western United States.

NOTE.—The above extract is from "Letters from High Latitudes."

THE MÆLSTROM.

Mælstrom—Like so many other 'traveller's stories' that about the Mælstrom is a fable; there is no such thing as the vortex described in the Reader; in ordinary weather ships can sail right across this so-called vortex; even small boats may venture the same when the weather is calm and the tides low. In stormy, windy weather, and when the tides are high, it is very dangerous,—vessels would be driven ashore or overwhelmed by the fearful sea. The Mælstrom (male-strum) is caused by the strong currents of the ocean running between the Loffoden islands; they run alternately six hours in one direction, and six hours in the opposite direction. But there are innumerable cross currents, produced by the rugged sides of the islands, and the rocky bottom of the sea which is quite shallow there. It is these cross currents that create the danger, dashing ships, etc., on the shore.

Oily wand—It is said that oil thrown on rough water will instantly make it smooth. A "wand" is a staff or rod that fairies, magicians, etc., are said to hold in their hand, and with which they perform their wonders. "Calmness" is the magician that made the water quiet; but why he should put oil on his wand is not very plain. 'Calmness wielding an oily wand' is pretty near nonsense; the word "oily" should not have been used.

Smooth unruffled—Here again the author uses an adjective too much: if the water is smooth it cannot be ruffled too.

Danger . . surface—The current might be quite strong under a smooth surface.

Mellow, etc.—gentle, dim light.

Calm, unagitated—another useless adjective.

Vortex below—If pupils will try the experiment they will find that, if with the hand or anything else they whirl some water in a basin rapidly around, the edges of the water will be much higher than the centre; hence the correctness of the term "vortex *below*."

Ever and anon—in quick succession.

Aspen—a species of poplar with pretty, round leaves that always tremble, even when there is no breeze

BATTLE OF THE BALTIC.

Campbell—For a sketch of this poet *see* under "Lord Ullin's Daughter."

Nelson—*See* the sketch under "The Veteran Tar."

Battle fierce—Russia, Denmark and Sweden had formed an alliance, called the Armed Neutrality, to resist the English claim of searching all the vessels of these nations for articles that might be used by the French in the war that was then going on. As these countries were then practically under the control of the French, the English determined to break up the alliance, and sent a fleet to the Baltic for that purpose. Sir Hyde Parker was the commander, Nelson being second; but it was owing to Nelson that this victory at Copenhagen was obtained. Parker was called home, and Nelson, now commander, forced Sweden to sign a treaty of peace with England; and soon after, while sailing up the Baltic towards St. Petersburg on a like errand, a Russian embassador met him with proposals of peace from the new emperor.

Leviathan—'the huge beast of the

ocean'; the whale is often called by this name in poetry.

Bulwarks — the men-of-war; literally, *works* or fortifications of *boles* or trunks of trees.

Sign . . flew—A flag was raised as a signal for attack.

Lofty, etc.—Explain what is meant.

Ten of April morn—The battle was fought on April 2, 1801.

The might . . scene — These lines, though very obscure, probably mean that 'the sailors (the *might* of England) became excited (flushed) when they thought of what was going to take place (anticipate the scene).

Deadly space—By coming closer the fleet would get within range of the guns of the batteries and the Danish vessels.

Hearts of oak—the watchword; the sailors' hearts were, so to speak, as tough and strong as the oak-tree.

Adamantine — literally, "unconquerable";—extremely hard. "Diamond," the name of the hardest of all precious stones, is a contraction of this word.

Hurricane eclipse—That is, when the hurricane produces such a storm as to darken the light of the sun.

As they strike—"Strike" means to haul down a sail, or a flag: in battle, the latter is a token of surrender. In this passage "strike the sail" seems to have the same meaning as 'striking the flag.' "They" refers to "Dane" (singular for plural).

Light the gloom—The construction is bad here; as it stands the subject of "light" seems to be "they"; but *that* does not make sense, for it is not the Danes that 'light the gloom' but the burning sails or ships. Some suitable subject, etc., has to be supplied for "light"; such as, 'or as they' (the sails), etc.

Brothers—The Danes are of the same race as the English.

Conquer . . save — to save England from the designs of her enemies; and Denmark from those who would lead the Danes into war.

Yield . . fleet—Nelson insisted on taking away a large number of the Danish men-of-war. In 1807 the English seized the whole of the Danish fleet, because they feared Napoleon was going to use it to invade England.

Death—*Black* is the emblem of death; the smoke of the guns was black,—hence the term *death-shades*.

Fires of funeral light—This means the Danish vessels burning along with the dead of their crews.

Festal . . blaze—On great occasions of public rejoicing, cities are illuminated, —lights being placed in all windows, etc.

Elsinore — a city and fortress in the island of Zealand, on the shore of the "Sound."

Deck of fame—Explain.

That died—"Hearts" is the antecedent of "that."

Riou—Captain Riou was greatly loved by all on board the fleet.

Mermaid—People once supposed that there was a race of beings living in the sea, the upper half of whose body was human, the lower, fish; the females were called "mermaids"—maids of the sea *(mer)*, and the males "mermen." Sailors believed that when the mermaids sang, or when they came upon the rocks and combed their hair, it was a sign of a wreck and the drowning of somebody.

THE BURNING OF MOSCOW.

Signal—complete, remarkable. The only excuse for this war was that the Russians would not obey Napoleon's will in everything,—more especially in his endeavor to crush Britain. He was determined to make all Europe do as he wished.

Elements—Formerly earth, air, fire, and water, were called the *elements*—that is, they were the *simple* things, not made up of others. Chemistry has proved that this notion is untrue.

Child of victory—Till Napoleon invaded Russia he was almost always victorious.

Vast host—nearly 500,000 soldiers; only a few thousands returned. Napoleon intended to stay the winter in Moscow, the old capital, and conquer the rest of Russia the next summer.

Parapet—*See* Chambers' Dictionary.

Muscovite—Russian; Russia is sometimes called Muscovy.

So deserted that, etc.—The clause after "that" is adverbial to "deserted."

Czar—literally, a king. The Czar was unable to oppose the great French army *(See* note on Hermann), and so took the plan of destroying the country

before them, so that the French might get no food.

In order, etc.—this is in construction with "were removed."

Exchange—the building where merchants meet to transact business.

Presentiment—Latin "*pre*" before; "*sentio*" to feel. The French felt that, as they had been the cause of this great destruction, vengeance would fall on them.

Effects—goods.

Natural feelings—feelings of nature—that is, regard for those who were dear to them, parents, children, friends, etc.

Equally brutish—The French were so wild with their success that they did not care what acts they performed; the Russians were so full of misery that they took no heed of anything;—both were like brutes.

Sutlers—provision dealers who follow armies and sell food, etc., to the soldiers.

Galley slaves—These were criminals who, as a punishment, were condemned to row in the galleys—a large, flat-bottomed boat, used on the Mediterranean.

Incendiary criminals—the prisoners who, on being released, were to fire the city.

THE GRATEFUL JEW.

In the war—"In" connects "rode" and "war."

Choczim—or Chotyn, a town in south-western Russia on the Dniester. A very large part of southern Russia, including the Crimea, was conquered from the Turks by the Russians.

Pfuhl—pfool.

Empress Catharine—Catharine II., daughter of a German prince, became the wife of the emperor Peter III. in 1745. The moral character of both was very bad; Peter had made up his mind to divorce Catharine, but she was too quick for him, causing him to be murdered and herself to be crowned sole ruler. She however exerted her power in many ways for the good of the people, making excellent laws, building towns, founding schools, encouraging everything that was beneficial to Russia.

Dragoons—*See* Chambers' Dictionary.

Neighboring-*See* the note under "Parting with the Esquimaux."

Turkish Jew—a Jew born in Turkey.

He ordered the Jew to be carried—Mr. Abbott would call "Jew" the *partial object* of "ordered," and "to be carried" the *complementary infinitive* of the same verb. *See* Abbott's "How to Parse."

Wound . . attended to—Compare this construction with "It was taken possession of" in the note under "The Buccaneers."

Entering—qualifies "him," not "Israelite."

Disacknowledged—This is an abominable word; it is to be hoped that no pupil will ever use it. Put in its place —*refused*, or some other suitable word.

Pass—a written order granting permission to pass, or go through, certain places, etc.

Kamenez, etc.—Podolia is one of the eight districts of West Russia,—south of Poland; Kamenez, or Kamenietz, a town of about 20,000 inhabitants, is situated on a small branch of the Dniester.

Apostatized—gave up Christianity; it is also used to denote an abandonment of one party, or side, and going over to another.

Mahommedanism—That is, the doctrine or belief, taught by Mahomet. Read "Mahomet"—Fourth Reader. The degraded state of the religion of his people grieved Mahomet, and he finally believed himself inspired by God to found a new belief. When 40 years old, after spending a long time in a cave near Mecca, he publicly proclaimed himself a prophet, preaching that there is but one God, Allah, and that he himself was his prophet. He wrote a book called the Koran which he said he had received at various times from the angel Gabriel; this contains his doctrine and is now the sacred book of his followers. He adopted a great deal of our Old Testament, and some of the New; he said Moses was a great prophet, and Jesus Christ was a great prophet, but he himself was a greater one; he never said he could work miracles. His religion, though much below Christianity, was greatly superior to any of the forms of faith around him. The date of his flight from Mecca called "The Hegira," is the starting point for reckoning time among Mahommedans, as the birth of Christ is with Christians. The following countries are Mahommedan:—Tur-

key in Europe and Asia; Arabia, Persia, Afghanistan, Beloochistan, all Tartary, Malacca and the East India islands; Egypt and all the east and north of Africa to the ocean; a great portion of the interior of Africa also; the Crimea and districts near by; the Circassians are also Mahommedans, and there are over 15,000,000 of them in Hindostan.

Servia—Teachers should bring before the pupils the late war in reference to Servia.

Bondage—*See* the note on "bondman," etc., under "The West Indian Islands."

Vehicle—from the Latin *veho* to carry.

Courtyard—This is a strange compound word; *court* has the same meaning as *yard.*

Magnanimous deliverer—People are accustomed to speak of the Jews as hard, unfeeling, extremely selfish; but the story shows they have as fine feelings as others have.

Sanctioned, etc.—That is, Natalie and Pfuhl were married.

NOTE.—Mr Ewald is a celebrated German professor; he has written a great deal about the Hebrew language, including a Hebrew grammar; he has also written a history of the Jews.

THE ROAD TO THE TRENCHES.

No, sir, etc.—This is addressed, no doubt, to an officer who wished to leave some men to take care of him, or take him back to camp.

Duty, etc.—Wellington always kept his *duty* before himself and his soldiers; Nelson at Trafalgar signalled to the sailors "England expects every man to do his duty." Some say that this signal made the sailors enthusiastic; others, that they were heard muttering—"Do our duty? what does he mean? of course we shall!"

Those whose guard you take, etc.—The soldiers seem to be marching up a hill to relieve other soldiers who are in the trenches up there,—to take their guard, or their place; these latter, the dying soldier says, will find him when they are coming down the hill from the trenches.

Men, etc.—Here the officer speaks.

Wrap, etc.—The officer takes off his cloak to wrap around the soldier; he himself will keep warm by walking.

Mark, etc.—The officer tells the men to mark the spot near the 'stunted larch' where the soldier lies, so that the others may find him.

Calms—"Wrench" is the subject of this verb.

Close . . pass—These are verbs in the imperative.

Far soft sounds, etc.—The dying man is insensible to all around him, and he thinks he is in England, and hears the voices of the loved ones. Compare stanzas 9, 10 and 11 of "The Lost Hunter."

Neither now, etc.—That is, the "softer tongue" and the "voices strong";—he was dead.

Where so many—to the grave.

Starving—The winter of 1855-6 was a terrible one for the English soldiers at the siege of Sebastopol; they were dying from hunger and cold while food in plenty was in the ships a few miles away.

All endured—"All" refers to 'battle, famine, snow.'

THE BATTLE OF THERMOPYLÆ.

Raleigh—*See* note under "Voyage of the Golden Hind."

Xerxes—zerx-ees—a celebrated king of Persia, who invaded Greece in 480 B.C. for the purpose of annexing it to his empire.

Hellespont—now the Dardanelles.

Thrace—now the east and central part of Turkey south of the Danube. Look up on the map of Ancient Greece all the places mentioned.

Leaving—in construction with "I," below.

How . . multitudes—one of the objects of "leaving"; "the lake . . Greece" being another.

Lissus—in Turkey, west of the Maritza.

Pissyrus—a small town in Thrace.

Some old writers say that Xerxes took over 5,000,000 people with him; it would need a river to supply them all. It is best not to believe the story too fully.

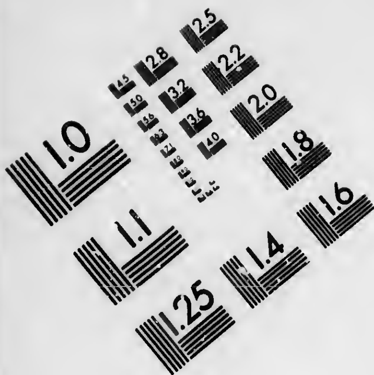
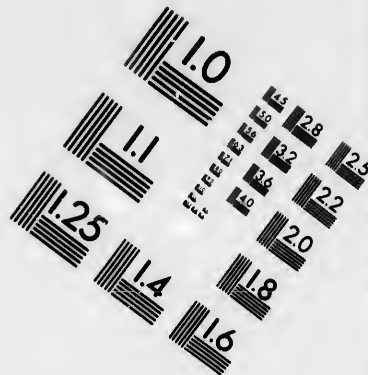
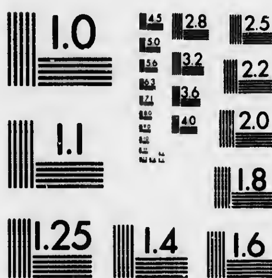
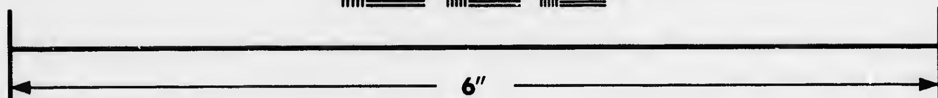
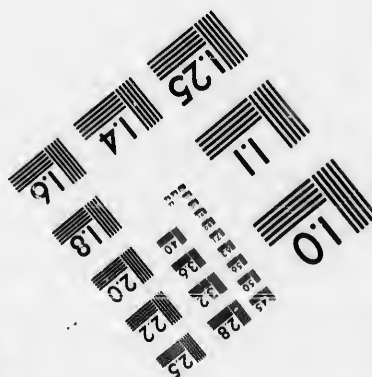



IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic
Sciences
Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

Accidents—occurrences, circumstances.

At first—Supply "he had an encounter," etc.; we would now say, "in the first place," or "first."

Thermopylæ—ther-mŏp-il-lee; that is, "hot gates";—there being hot springs near this passage through the mountains. Thermopylæ is in the northern part of Greece.

Thessaly—the north-east country of Greece; now, the southern province of Turkey.

Sometime—formerly, once.

Phocians—people of Phocis, in central Greece,—now, northern Greece; the celebrated city of Delphi was in their country.

Wall with gates—that is, right across the path. On one side of the narrowest part of the path the mountains rose high and steep; on the other there was a precipice descending straight down to the sea.

Leonidas—le-ŏn-id-as—Sparta always had two kings.

Sparta—a city in Laconia, in the Peloponnesus (now Morea) famous for its warriors.

Lacedemonians—lăs-ē-dē-mŏn-ee-ans—Spartans.

Tegeatæ—tej-ē-a-tee—people of Tegĕa, a city in Arcadia in the central part of Peloponnesus.

Mantineans—man-tin-ĕe-ans—in the same country as Tegea.

Peloponnesians—pel-o-pon-ĕé-sĭ-ans.

Thebans—people of Thebes, a large city in ancient Greece north of the Gulf of Corinth.

Thespians—people of Thespiæ, a little town south of Thebes.

Locrians—people of Locris, the country round Thermopylæ.

One handful—We say now "*a*" handful.

So might—"*so*" refers to "ignorant."

Renegade—One who gives up his party (or principles) and goes over to the other side.

Let upon the backs—attack them in the rear.

Had not, etc.—Supply "if" before this.

Make good—defend, keep.

Out of their strength—that is, out of their fortification.

Virtue—From the Latin "*vir*"—a man, good man; it here means bravery—an old use of the word. *Manhood* comes nearest this old meaning.

World of men—*See* the size of Xerxes' army, above.

Doubt what inconvenience—to fear that he might be put into great danger.

Such as had not—"as" is a relative pronoun here.

Singular—remarkable.

Dieneces—dī-en-ē-ces.

THE DESTRUCTION OF POMPEII.

Pompeii—pom-pée-ee-ī.

Watering-place—that is, a place to which people resort for a length of time for the purpose of bathing, either at the sea-side, as at Tadousac, Cacouna, or Murray Bay; or where there are mineral springs, as at Saratoga in New York State, north of Albany.

Senate—the council, or parliament, of Rome. The name "senate" comes from the Latin word "*senex*," an old man; because at first the councillors were all old men.

Villas—generally, pretty little country houses owned by people living in the city.

Broils—quarrels.

Politics—This is one of those words that have no singular form. Mention others of the same kind.

Frescoes—pictures made with a peculiar kind of paint upon *freshly* laid plaster; the colors sink into the plaster and thus become durable.

Then as beautiful—Parse "then."

Gala dresses—showy, bright dresses, or holiday dresses.

Vase—*See* dictionary. We sometimes hear a very affected pronunciation of this word—"vawze"; it is to be hoped that no pupil will imitate it, for it is in accordance with neither French nor Latin, nor yet English. The best authorities are divided in their pronunciation between "vaze" ("a" as in "far") and "vāce."

Like—This word is never a preposition; it is either an adjective or an adverb. After the verb "to be," it is an adjective, and the preposition "to" is to be supplied before the noun or pronoun after it. If, after "like," the verb going before it is really understood again, then "like" is an adverb; if

not, it is an adjective. John skates like Henry;—that is, like Henry skates —an adverb.

Belgravia — the most fashionable part of London.

Acme—the highest point.

To find, etc. — used adverbially with *astonished.*

Vestibule—a hall or porch in the front part of a building.

Impluvium — a Latin word, meaning a large basin in the first room on entering a Roman house, into which the rain-water ran ("impluvo"—to rain into); it also, as here, meant the room as well as the basin.

Household gods—Every Roman household had its gods, who, it was believed, took especial care of it; no one worshipped these gods but the members of this family. *See* the story of Micah in Judges xvii.

Clients—These were not slaves, nor yet full Roman citizens; they were attached to some Roman citizen—their *patron* —who protected them; they rendered various kinds of service in return.

Tablinum — tab-līn-um — (explained in the extract).

Mosaic — mo-zā-ic— pictures formed by means of little pieces of various colored stones, gems, glass, metal, etc., wedged firmly together. The Italians are especially skilled in this work,—imitating the most delicately tinted flowers, or the most gaudy insects. Sometimes this word is applied to pavements formed of small, square tiles, arranged in various patterns; this, however, is *tesselated* work, properly.

Archives — ar-kīves—records, papers of public importance.

Cabinet — generally, a small private room.

Antiquities—relics, remnants of a past age.

Peristyle — (parse); a court, or square with pillars on three or four sides; a room surrounded with pillars.

While from behind—"While" is here a conjunction merely, equivalent to "*and,*" not introducing a dependent clause.

Legends—wild or romantic stories of the olden times.

Achilles . . Briseis — a-kĭl-lees — brī-sēe-is. Achilles was the most famous of all the old Greek legendary heroes; Briseis was a beautiful maiden who was made captive by Achilles, but who was taken from him again. The story is told by the Greek poet Homer.

Europa — was the beautiful daughter of Agenor, king of Phœnicia, carried off by the god Jupiter.

Amazons — These were a fabulous, war like nation of women, renowned for their great beauty, living in the northern part of Asia Minor; battles with them formed a favorite subject with Greek and Roman painters.

Museum — mu-zée-um — a building (or room) for containing curiosities or works of art. At Naples there is a museum especially taken up with objects from Pompeii.

Arabesques — delicate fancy work of fruits, flowers, etc., but not of animals, —a kind of ornament brought into use by the old Saracens or *Arabs;*—hence the name.

Bronze—a hard metal composed of copper and tin melted together;—about nine parts of copper to one of tin; the color is yellowish.

Tapestry — hangings of cloth, of wool, or of silk, worked with various figures; they were generally placed around the walls fastened up, or on frames that could be moved about the room.

Reclined — In ancient days people did not sit at table as we do, but lay on couches, supporting themselves on one elbow; the ate with their fingers, not having knives and forks.

Libation—wine or other liquor *poured out* as a kind of sacrifice to the gods.

Bacchus — back-kus — the god of wine among the old Greeks and Romans.

Horace — a famous Roman poet about the time of Christ; he wrote a great deal in praise of wine, as did also the Greek poet Anacreon (an-ăc-rē-on;— the latter died about 478 before Christ.

Palled — satisfied, or rather, more than satisfied,—sickened.

Consuls—These were the highest officers or magistrates of ancient Rome; they were elected every year; the pro-consuls we would now call *ex-consuls,* as they had been consuls previously; they governed distant parts of the Roman empire *for* (pro) the *consuls.*

Gambled away — *See* note on "Hermann."

Like a pine tree—dark and spreading. Is "like" an adjective here?

Scoria—cinders from volcanoes; pumice (pūm-iss)—a stone made light and porous by the gases of volcanoes: it is gray in color, and lighter than water.

Catastrophe—Before this time Vesuvius had never been known as a volcano. In the four following lines "died" has to be supplied in several places.

Began to dig—It is said that some persons were digging a well, and came to the slated roof of a house; this led to a general excavation.

Mar[illegible] . counters—It was once sup-

posed that Pompeii was overwhelmed with lava, — melted rock — from Vesuvius; but pupils will see that everything made of wood, and all animals would have been burned up, if this were true; it was ashes and a deluge of mud from the mountain that covered the city.

Lurking . . images—There was no end to the deceptions practised on the idol-worshippers by the priests.

Mysteries — Each temple had a sacred part into which only the priests could go; the figures painted in them represented some mystery or doctrine of the religion.

Ghost, etc. — that is, the people who were so civilized have passed away, we cannot see them; but we can tell by what they have left behind them, what they were;—it gives us the shadow, as it were, of the time past.

NOTE.—Two other towns, Herculaneum and Stăbiæ (bee-ee) were destroyed at the same time as Pompeii.

VIEW OF LISBON.

Commanding—looking down upon.

Athens . . freedom — from about 460 B.C. to 300 B.C. *See* the note on "While yet the Greek," etc., under "The Prairies."

Theatre—the place, the scene.

Memorials of greatness—In the times of Columbus, Portugal took the lead in adventures by sea; it was really a splendid little kingdom.

Moral . . world—That is, in the conduct, or life of people.

Interspersed-literally, *scattered among.*

Castellated pile—a large building, or mass of buildings, having towers, etc., like a castle.

Portico—a covered space or projection of a building surrounded by columns or pillars.

Broke . . eminence—The writer says that as he stood on the hill and looked down the almost perpendicular sides, the houses seemed to him like the great steps of a stair, such as would suit a giant.

Regal pavilions—A "pavilion" is a *tent*, literally; here it probably means separate houses of a light, open structure. "Regal" literally means belonging to a king;—magnificent.

Imaginary extension—When the beholder saw the vessels sailing backward and forward on the ocean, he naturally thought of the countries to which they were going, and he would imagine he saw those countries; thus one sight, or picture, was before his eye, and another was in his mind, or *imagination.*

BERNARDO DEL CARPIO.

Mrs. Hemans—*See* the sketch under "A Song of Emigration."

Don Sancho Saldana—done san-tcho sal-dán-yah.

King Alphonso—Alphonso became king of Asturias in the north of Spain about A.D. 795; nearly all the rest of Spain was in the possession of the Moors.

Bernardo del Carpio—The old story says that Bernardo, wearied out of patience by the cruelty of Alphonso, left Asturias and sought alliance with the Moors. He fortified himself in his castle in Leon and plundered the territory of Alphonso; the latter besieged his castle in vain, till at last an agreement was made that Alphonso should release Don Sancho on condition of Bernardo's surrendering the castle; the king at once ordered Don Sancho to be put to death in prison, and the body to be dressed and mounted on horseback as the poem relates. *See* Lockhart's "Spanish Ballads."

Liege—lord, sovereign—one to whom as a sovereign a subject is *bound*—Latin *ligo* to bind.

Lance in rest—That is, in a position aiming straight for the enemy.

As a leader—'as if he were a leader.'

That saw—The antecedent of "that" is "they."

Talk not . . men—That is, 'don't say anything is grief except that grief which causes a warrior to weep.' Warriors are supposed to be very hard hearted, and the grief must be very great that would cause them to weep.

Steel-gloved—having on a steel glove, or "gauntlet."

My father—Bernardo does not say anything about his father; but we can guess his thoughts. The earth is now no longer a bright place to the young knight, since his father is dead.

Where banners waved—on the battle field.

I would—He had wished that both he and his father should die in battle. Bernardo was a very famous warrior; when Charlemagne (*See* "Founding of Aix-la-Chapelle") invaded Spain to conquer it, the story says that it was chiefly through Bernardo's bravery that he was defeated.

Give answer—This verb is in the imperative.

Perjured—*See* Chambers' Dictionary.

And a king—'even though you are a king.'

His banners . . Spain—The story says no more about Bernardo; 'he never led his warriors again to battle.'

TAKING OF GIBRALTAR.

Gibraltar—This name means 'the rock of Tarik, a Moorish chieftain who invaded Spain in the 8th century.

Quarrel for its throne — Louis XIV., king of France, was very anxious that the crown of Spain should come to himself or to some one of his family, so that he might have control of Spain as well as of France. William III., of England, feared that if Louis should get his wish France would be too powerful and wou'd want to subdue other nations. So William supported the claim of Charles (here called Charles III.) a son of the emperor of Germany, some of the Spaniards favored Charles, others favored Philip the grandson of Louis; when the old king of Spain was dying he left the crown to Philip; and then war broke out. *See* "War of the Spanish succession" in the History of England.

Following reign—Queen Anne's.

Council of war—called together his chief officers and planned what was best to be done.

Tetuan—a seaport in the northern part of Morocco.

Disproportionate — The soldiers were not nearly so numerous as they ought to have been, seeing how important the place was.

Marquis de Saluces—mar-kée day sal-oo-thes.

Hesse Darmstadt -- hés-se (final "e" as in "her"), darm-stat;—a country in Germany.

Isthmus—the neck of land joining Gibraltar to the main land.

Mole—a massive pier projecting out into the water to break its force, thus forming a sort of harbor on the opposite side.

Pinnace-*See* note on "Cartier at Hochelaga."

Redoubt—a sort of fortification made of earth.

Capitulate — surrender, generally on certain conditions.

Drawn battle—that is, neither could claim the victory.

Leaving—Parse these two "leavings."

Villadarias—vil-la-dar-ée-as:—a grandee, or noble of Spain,

Battalions — bat-tál-yun ;—a body of foot soldiers (infantry) varying from 500 to 1000 men.

Frigates—smaller men-of-war with one covered deck for guns; sometimes any small vessel. *See* Sir Humphrey Gilbert's frigate.

Forlorn hope—a body of soldiers sent on a desperate duty; storming a fortress, etc.

Precipice — a perpendicular cliff, from which, if a person fell, he would go *head-first.*

Transports—vessels for taking soldiers from one place to another.

Convoyed—guarded, accompanied.

English and Dutch colors—that is, that had English and Dutch flags flying. The Dutch were allies of the English in this war.

That of sir, etc.—Parse "*that.*"

Exertions of their boats—The sailors in the small boats *towed* the vessels away.

King's lines — intrenchments, fortifications.

To be compelled-used adverbially with "vigorously." This sentence is rather loose. Say rather "but were so vigorously . . garrison, that they were," etc.

Tesse—tes-sáy.

Formally-in the manner or form usual.

Its value . . capture — This sentence is not clear. Perhaps we are to take the words after "than" to mean from what it was by those who "captured the place." The whole sentence might read: "Its value . . and the nation *from* what it was (by the victors) at the period of its capture."

Vote of thanks—It is usual, when a victory has been gained, for parliament to pass a vote of thanks to the army or navy, as the case may be.

Quadruple alliance — an alliance of four. This was one between England, Holland, France, and Germany, against Spain, Sweden, and Russia, in 1718.

Doubt that—The clause after "that" is adjective to "doubt."

A ROMAN'S HONOR.

Carthaginians—people of Carthage a famous city of antiquity, situated near Tunis in northern Africa. It was originally a colony from Tyre in Phœnicia; its commerce was very extensive; some say that the Carthaginians sailed around the Cape of Good Hope; they certainly used to go to Britain for tin. Carthagena and Cadiz in Spain were founded by these daring sailors and merchants. *See* note on "Assyria" under "Ocean."

Driven to extremity—The war referred to here is known by the name of the First Punic War; it began in the year B.C. 264 and ended in the year B.C. 241. The Romans were completely victorious, compelling Carthage to sue for peace. The extract opens at the time when the Roman general Regulus had invaded Africa and subdued all the country around Carthage, the latter having in vain asked for peace.

Moloch—As the people of Carthage were from Tyre in Phœnicia, they worshipped the same gods as the parent city did. Moloch was a god to whom human sacrifice was offered. In the Bible, where Moloch is often called Chemosh and Melech, the prophet tells the Israelites that 'they have caused their children to pass through the fire to Moloch.' It is not certain, however, what this means;—some think it was merely passing them through the fire, thereby dedicating them to Moloch.

Brazen hands—The children sacrificed to Moloch were laid on the arms of the huge brazen image of that god; the image was heated very hot from a fire on the inside. This practice of sacrificing children has been doubted by many historians.

Spartan—from the city of Sparta in the Morea, in Greece.

Xanthippus—zan-thip-pus. This man drilled the Carthaginians some time before he led them out to battle. The Romans, who could never say anything good of their enemies, relate that Xanthippus was embarked for home in a leaky vessel, purposely, and was drowned.

Columns—of soldiers.

For his word — All this story about Regulus going to Rome and then returning to Carthage to be tortured to death, is regarded by our best historians as pure falsehood. Merivale says it was probably a story invented by the Romans to excuse their own terrible cruelty towards their Carthaginian prisoners. The Romans never hesitated to break their word or the most solemn treaty, when they could gain anything by it.

Senate—the council, or parliament of Rome; it was called *senate* because old men (Latin *senex)* originally composed it.

Barbarian—The Romans, copying after the Greeks, called all nations but themselves and the Greeks, *barbarians*.

Campagna—In the ordinary acceptation the Campagna (cam-pa'n-ya) is the district extending a few miles eastward from Rome; sometimes it is meant to include a large extent of territory south of Rome.

Conscript fathers—a title given to the Roman senators because their names were *written* in a register.

Consul—the chief officer at Rome; he commanded the army; carried out the laws of the senate, etc.

Regulus—The story goes that Regulus was tortured to death on returning to Carthage.

THE BATTLE OF THE NILE.

Bay—Aboukir, at the mouth of the Nile.

Buonaparte—*See* the note under "The Natural Bridge." The name is now spelled without the "u."

Brueys—bru-ee.

Moored—anchored, made fast.

Nelson — *See* the sketch under "The Veteran Tar."

Hood—a famous captain in the English navy.

Sweeping the seas—It was a long time before Nelson could find out what course the French fleet had taken.

Bursting sails—This must not be taken literally; it is merely intended to show that Nelson was very eager to come up with the French.

Soundings—the depth of water.

Ship to swing—The French ships were larger than the English ones. When at anchor, vessels must have room to swing round with the currents.

Answer—That is, *yes!*

Foley—another captain; he afterwards was knighted, was at Copenhagen with Nelson in 1802, and died an admiral in 1833.

Leading inside—between the French and the shore.

By the stern—threw the anchors from the stern instead of the bow.

Generous construction-Hood thought Foley had passed the first ship purposely, thus leaving the first one—the place of honor, to him.

Portentous silence — a silence that showed something terrible would soon follow.

Boatswain—"Bō-sn" is the only pronunciation heard among sailors. *See* Chambers' Dictionary.

Blood-stained — The English captains had orders to anchor their vessels and furl the sails before beginning to fire; thus the French shot would kill some men from among the crews before any return was given.

Defile of fire—between two fires.

Bellerophon—bel-lĕr-o-fun.

Orient—ō-ree-ŏn—the flag-ship of the French admiral.

Reckless gallantry-bravery that leads people to take too little heed of themselves in what they are doing.

Whisper—That the Orient would soon blow up.

Gallant crew — It would be well for teachers to read Mrs. Hemans' "Casbianca" to their scholars in connection with this; that poem is founded on an incident connected with this burning vessel.

Swarthy crowds—the dark Egyptians who were looking on.

Far off . . fleets-The fleets were stretched out in very long lines.

Fragments in, which — The comma between *in* and *which* should be between *fragments* and *in*, if used at all.

Found his way— After being wounded Nelson retired to the hold of the vessel to get the wound dressed.

Gay shores — The French have long borne the character of being a gay people; hence the term *gay* is here given to France itself.

Frigate—*See* the note under "Taking of Gibraltar."

Ship-of-the-line—a man-of-war carrying 60 guns or more.

Tricolor—*three colors*, blue, white, red adopted during the French Revolution as the national colors of France.

Theseus-thē-soos ("th" as in "thing")

Attempting--qualifies "she."

Capitulate — to surrender on certain conditions.

Flag of truce—a white flag signifying that no fighting was wished for the present.

Battle-flag--the flag hoisted when fighting was going on, or to begin fighting; the hauling down of this flag meant surrender; then the conqueror's flag was put in its place.

Rounded to—turned the broadside to the enemy.

India saved—The French intended, if victorious in Syria, etc., to invade India, from which country the English had some time before almost wholly expelled them. By this defeat the French had to give up their plans.

Trafalgar — *See* "The departure and death of Nelson"—Fifth Reader.

Hecatomb—*See* Chambers' Dictionary. It was usual in old Greek and Roman days to sacrifice at the grave of a hero large numbers of cattle or even prisoners taken in war. In the extract the destruction of the French fleet was the hecatomb.

Obsequies—funeral ceremonies.

Mission-That is, by his skill and daring to save England from the power of the enemy. After Trafalgar there was no other sea-fight of any importance.

OCEAN.

Lord George Gordon Byron was born in the year 1788. His father, a captain in the army, and a very dissipated character, deserted his wife who with her son then went to live in Aberdeen Scotland, Young Byron, now become a lord by the death of

relative, was sent to Harrow school, and from there to Cambridge university. On leaving Cambridge he lived at Newstead Abbey on his own estate, and soon after published "Hours of Idleness." Some time after this he became very dissipated, and very extravagant. A stay of two years on the continent did him good; on returning home he published the first part of his greatest poem "Childe Harold's Pilgrimage"; after this came a number of Turkish tales. In 1815 he was married, but, living unhappily with his wife, he went again to the continent, wandering about from place to place, and sending to England the poems that he wrote. In 1823 his sympathy was excited for the Greeks who were fighting for their liberty against the Turks, and he resolved to devote both his fortune and himself to their cause; but unfortunately, he died of a fever at Missolonghi in Greece in 1823.

The extract consists of the six last stanzas but two of canto iv. of "Childe Harold's Pilgrimage."

In vain—That is, the fleets can do no harm to the ocean.

Marks . . ruin—destroys cities, lays countries waste, etc.

Control . . shore—Man has no power over the ocean.

A shadow . . own—There is an abrupt change of construction in this line; "man's ravage" is the ravage *caused by man;* "his own" is the ravage, or ruin, *of himself* caused by the ocean; —a change from an active to a passive construction.

Thy paths—Why not?

Shake him, etc.—Explain how.

Vile strength—Why "vile"?

Howling, etc.—By using this word Byron seems to mark his contempt for those men who, in an agony of fear, call upon God to save them from an impending danger. Indeed, none of us can have a very high opinion of the religion of a man who calls on God when there is danger, and forgets him when there is none.

Where haply lies . . earth—Byron is obscure here; perhaps he means that the storm overtook the man when near his home, in some little bay where he hoped for safety; and the raging water, after dashing him about for a time, drowned him despite his prayers.

Lay—"Lie" is the correct word; Byron wanted a rhyme for *bay*, and he had used *lie* in the line above.

It has been suggested by a friend that "lay" is the correct word, the object being the next stanza as far as "war"; consequently there should be no period or other punctuation mark after "lay." This interpretation, it seems to me, enfeebles the verse very materially. Besides it is not the *man* that lays the armaments, but *Ocean*.

Leviathans—a huge monster. *See* Chambers' Dictionary. Are the war "leviathans" made of oak now? "Leviathans" is in apposition with "armaments."

Clay creator—man,—God being the creator of the living, real leviathans.

Vain title—empty, having no real value.

Lord of thee—Byron here has a fling at England; Englishmen boast that "Britannia rules the sea,"—meaning that Great Britain is the most powerful of all nations by sea.

These—in apposition with "armaments" the subject of "*are.*"

Mar . . Trafalgar—For an account of the Armada *see* the History of England, reign of Elizabeth; for that of Trafalgar *see* the reign of George III., 1805,—also "The Death of Nelson,"—Fifth Reader. It was a storm, mainly, that destroyed the Armada; and a storm after the fight at Trafalgar also destroyed many of the captured and disabled vessels.

Yeast of waves—Explain.

Changed in all save thee—That is, the empires have changed,—in outward form in many respects, in inhabitants, etc.; but the ocean that washed their shores is unchanged.

Assyria, etc.—The cities and countries named in this line, once possessed vast empires, but not now. Assyria, whose capital was Ninevah, held sway over the valley of the Euphrates, and, for a very short time, westward to the Mediterranean. *See* note on "Ninevah" under "Interior of an Ancient Palace," etc. Byron, no doubt, means Persia, not Assyria in reality; the empire of Persia bordered on the Caspian, Black, Mediterranean, Red, and Arabian seas., —hence the 'shores of ocean' may well be called Persia's empire, but not Assyria's; besides, the Persian empire included Assyria. Greece, under Alexander (*See* under "The Natural Bridge") conquered the whole of the Persian empire. For the Roman empire *see* under "Falls of Niagara." Carthage at one time possessed all northern Africa, Spain and Portugal, beside numerous colonies elsewhere. It is scarcely known now where Carthage stood. *See* note under "A Roman's Honor."

Many a tyrant—the subject of "has

wasted" understood—'many a tyrant has wasted them since.'

Wasted them . . free—washed their shores when they were not subdued by other nations.

Obey the stranger . . savage—Assyria, Persia, Greece (to some extent) are ruled over by the Turks,—a nation of a different race, coming from the region of the Altai mountains; Rome in Byron's days was ruled by French and Austrians,—once the slaves, or subjects, of Rome; Carthage is ruled by the savage African;—this is Byron's meaning, at least.

Dried up, etc.—Northern Africa was once very populous and highly cultivated; but the wars of the invading Germans and of the so-called Romans in 6th century, and the still more terrible invasion and conquest by the Saracens in the 7th century, almost destroyed the inhabitants, leaving the country defenceless against the sands of the desert.

Glasses—reflects. Byron says that God shows himself—that is, his might,—in the tempest. Compare the note on "Elijah" under "Afar in the Desert."

Image of Eternity—The ocean is endless, so is eternity.

From a boy—at his home in Aberdeen.

Mane—the waters, or rather the waves.

SLAVERY.

William Cowper, the son of a clergyman, was born in 17[illegible]. After leaving school he studied law and became a clerk in the House of Lords; but this place he had to resign owing to his nervous temperament. After this he became insane for a time, and on his recovery went to live in Huntingdon where he became acquainted with the rev. Mr. Unwin; on Mr. Unwin's death Cowper removed to Olney in Buckinghamshire along with Mrs. Unwin, and there he met his other lady friend who did so much for him, Lady Austin. Cowper was naturally of a gloomy disposition, and Lady Austin exerted herself to rouse him from his melancholy. He was a truly religious man in an irreligious age; he abhorred all hypocrisy, all persecution, all oppression of whatever kind. Cowper wrote a great deal; all boys know "John Gilpin"; then we have his "Task,"—a long poem or rather succession of poems; "On the Receipt of my Mother's Picture"; "The Loss of the Royal George"; "Table Talk,"—and many others. Cowper died in 1800.

No flesh—That is, 'man has no pity, or feeling, for other men.' We call an unfeeling person *hard hearted* or *stony* hearted, because the sorrow or wrongs of others have no more effect on him than they would on a stone.

Obdurate—Notice that the accent of this word is on the second syllable in the extract; it was so pronounced in Cowper's time; we put the accent on the first syllable.

Natural . . brotherhood—All mankind are brothers. Explain how.

Fellow . . own—referring to the negroes. It is said that Sir John Hawkins in Elizabeth's reign, was the first to introduce slaves into the British West Indies; he brought them from Guinea. *See* the note on "Mine of St. Domingo" under the "Buccaneers."

Having power—"Having" qualifies "he" in the preceding line.

Worthy cause—What does Cowper really mean by this expression?

Devotes him as his lawful prey—Do *him* and *his* in this sentence refer to the same person? Write the sentence in prose, using the pronouns properly.

Narrow frith, etc.—Cowper, no doubt, means France and England, separated by the narrow Strait of Dover; these two countries were at war four times in the poet's lifetime.

Mountains interposed—It would be well for teachers to draw the attention of the scholars to these "boundaries" between nations.

Into one—into one nation; the poet may be referring to France and Spain.

Worse than all—Supply "which is" or "what is" before "worse." The construction then will be "he (that is, *man*) chains him . . beast, which is worse than all."

That Mercy—"That" is the partial object of "sees"; it also seems to perform the office of the conjunction *so that.* It is not a proper usage of the word.

Sinews bought, etc.—Of course, the poet here uses part of the body as the whole man,—slaves.

NOTE.—This extract is taken from "The Task," Book II. (the Garden), commencing with line eight.

AFAR IN THE DESERT.

Thomas Pringle (born in 1783), a poet and miscellaneous writer, tried literature for a time after graduating at Edinburgh University, but, being too liberal in politics, he disagreed with his employers and soon after through Sir Walter Scott's influence, emigrated to the Cape of Good Hope. Here he prospered for some years till his liberal views again got him into trouble, and in 1826 he returned to England where he soon became Secretary to the Anti-Slavery Society. He published several works, among which were "African Sketches" and a "Narrative of a Residence in South Africa." He died in 1834.

Desert—The deserts of South Africa are not like the sandy plains of North Africa; during the rainy season they are covered with herbage.

Bush-boy—There is a tribe of negroes in South Africa called "Bushmen" by the English.

Oribi–an animal of the antelope kind.

Gnu — an animal with a head like a buffalo and body like a horse; it is of the antelope or goat species.

Gazelle—a beautiful animal of the goat kind.

Hartebeest—spelled also "hartbeest"—a rather large animal of the antelope species.

Kudu—spelled also "koodoo"—another species of antelope, the largest of the kind, with beautiful, twisted horns.

Eland — a heavy-bodied animal of the antelope species.

River horse—the hippopotamus.

Karroo—the desert.

Springbok—There seems to be no end to the different kinds of antelopes in South Africa.

Quagga—an animal like the horse, but striped somewhat like the zebra.

Zebra—It is said that this animal is untameable.

Their nest—Ostriches lay their eggs in the sand, but they do not abandon them as people used to believe. At the present day men in South Africa and Australia raise large herds of ostriches for their beautiful feathers.

White man's foot, etc.—Boys will remember that a great deal of South Africa has been explored of late years; the names of Moffatt, Livingstone, Cameron, Gordon, Stanley and others will occur to them.

Coranna, etc.—These are tribes of negroes in South Africa. Livingstone lived among the Bechuanas. Why "quivered"?

Elijah — *See* this beautiful passage in 1 Kings xix. 4-14.

SOURCE OF THE NILE.—

Alexander—*See* the sketch under "The Natural Bridge."

Ptolemy Philadelphus — one of the Macedonian kings of Egypt, reigned from 285 to 247 B.C.

Lucan—a Roman poet born in A.D. 37 and put to death by the cruel emperor Nero in A.D. 65.

Cæsar — *See* the sketch under "The Natural Bridge."

Cleopatra—a beautiful queen of Egypt; she killed herself to escape falling into the hands of the Roman emperor Augustus, B.C. 30.

Seneca—a famous Roman philosopher, the teacher of the emperor Nero by whom he was ordered to commit suicide. This took place in A.D. 65.

Nero—the cruel emperor of Rome. At first he reigned well, but changed soon to a most hateful tyrant putting to death his mother and his best friends; he set Rome on fire, the story says, just to see it burn, and laid the blame on the Christians, who were cruelly persecuted in consequence. He was murdered by conspirators in A.D. 68.

Centurions—originally, commanders of 100 men.

Sources, etc.—It was a common saying that 'the Nile had its source in the clouds.'

Bruce—a famous African traveller, born in 1730 and died in 1794. He travelled over a large part of Asia Minor and then set out to find the source of the Nile. His account of what he saw was laughed at, but later travellers confirm his words in the main.

D'Arnaud—dar-nō.

Sabatier—sah-bat-'yā.

Anglo-Indian — That is, Englishmen living for some time in India.

Reversing the natural, etc. — The natural order would seem to be to start from the mouth of the river and sail up to the source.

Lacustrine plateau—an elevated plain abounding in *lakes*.
Pithy—short and full of meaning.
Foreign Office-the office of the minister of the British government, who has under his care the dealings of England with foreign affairs. We have no such office in our Canadian government, because England does all that business for us.
The Nile is settled—Not yet (1878); Stanley, the latest explorer, is quite sure that the Victoria Nyanza is only a lake on the Nile, not its source.

THE GORILLA.

M. du Chaillu—This name, though a French one, is to be pronounced in the English style; for the man himself has become a thorough American. The "M" stands for "monsieur,"—mus-yeh (*eh* nearly like "*u*" in *utter*).
Boulders—large pieces of rock.
Nomadic—wandering about.
Same . . together—Is this the way a horse moves its legs?
Trophy—an evidence of victory.
Night-mare-*See* Chambers' Dictionary. The word is often spelled without the hyphen.
King—How so?
Bass—bāse: *see* the dictionary.
On the defensive—ready to defend, but not intending to attack.

SLAVE HUNT IN THE SAHARA.

Mr. St. John is connected with the London press; he is a good Oriental scholar, and has written a "History of the British Conquests in India."

Razzia—rad-zec-ä.
Named—That is, named as the one against which the attack is to be made.
Bazaar—*See* Chambers' Dictionary.
Feudal master—the lord to whom the person owes service, but not as a slave.
Kidnap—*See* Chambers' Dictionary.
Napoleon-*See* the note under "The Natural Bridge."
Marengo—in northern Italy; Napoleon forced his way over the Alps and met the Austrians when the latter had no idea that he was coming.
Stockades—a kind of fortification formed by driving stakes close together firmly into the ground.
Forlorn-hope — *See* the note under "Taking of Gibraltar."
Calabashes — vessels made of dried gourd shells.
Fruits—What are they?
Staves — the plural of "*staff*." Give other words ending in "f" forming the plural in this way.
Canopy—a covering, like a tent.
Plantation of Virginia — Not now; there are no more slaves in the United States. *See* note on "Lash of the slave-master" under "The River St. Lawrence."

THE SLAVE'S DREAM.

Longfellow — *See* the sketch under "Hiawatha's Sailing."
In the mist . . land—The same idea is referred to in the "Lost Hunter" and in "The Backwoodsman."
Lordly—great, noble.
King—the predicate nominative after "strode."
Tinkling-Camels in caravans wear bells.
Flamingoes-*See* Chambers' Dictionary.
Kaffir huts—The Kaffirs, who are not properly a negro race, belong to South Africa, and the slave dreams he is by the Niger. But Mr. Longfellow uses a poet's liberty. "Kaffir" is said to be an Arabian word for "unbeliever."
River-horse—the hippopotamus.
Forests . . tongues—Explain this.
Fetter—that bound the soul.
Death . . sleep—Death had made his dream true in one respect,—he was free.

NOTE. — The slave dreams of the time when he was free,—when he was a king and pursued the game in his own land, and lay down to sleep amid the cries and noises of the free beasts of the forest, or amid the wild, free roar of the wind.

SCENE AT ST. HELENA.

Tricolor — *See* the note under "The Battle of the Nile."

Morally sure—That is, 'sure according to all appearances.'

St. Helena — This island is 2092 feet high. There is only one place that vessels can land at. James' Town is the capital.

Conciergerie—cone-see-air-zur-ē ("zur" as in "azure"); a famous prison in Paris.

Black Hole—*See* the History of England, reign of George II.

Bastile—bas-teel; a renowned fortress in Paris, used as a prison; it was destroyed by the Parisians July 14, 1789.

Pandora—In old Greek legend Pandora, *the all-gifted one*, was the first woman on earth; all the gods presented her with gifts which would be blessings to mankind; they were put into a box which she was not to open; but curiosity overcame her, and on her opening the lid all the blessings flew away—all but one, Hope, which she managed to retain by shutting the box before it could get out. There are other versions of the story.

Civil service—in the service of government, but not in the army or navy.

Quarantine—When vessels come into a harbor from some distant country, they are obliged to stop some way off the city, till it can be ascertained if there is any sickness aboard.

Napoleon—He died at St. Helena in 1821. *See* the note under "The Natural Bridge."

Louis Phillippe—He was the son of the Duke of Orleans, was chosen king of the French, but was expelled in 1848. He went to England and died there.

Frigate—*See* the note under "Taking of Gibraltar."

La belle Poule—lah bel pool.

Invalides — a celebrated hospital at Paris, founded in 1671 by Louis XIV., for old servants of court—favorites and soldiers.

Wooden walls—the men-of-war.

The battle . . breeze — a quotation from the poet Campbell's "Ye Mariners of England."

Roads—*See* the dictionary.

Terra firma—Latin for *the firm earth.*

La Favorite—lah făv-or-eet.

Corvette—*See* Chambers' Dictionary.

THE GIRAFFE.

Amazoola—a tribe in South Africa, not properly negroes.

Tip-toe of expectation—in eager expectation,—as persons anxious to see anything will stand on tip-toe to do it.

Hottentots—a tribe of South African negroes; they are very quiet and are employed by the whites as herdsmen and farm laborers.

Eland—*See* note under "Afar in the Desert."

Marigua—a river in South Africa, in the Transvaal; it runs into the Limpopo.

Drawn . . blank—hunted it carefully over, finding nothing.

Hartebeeste—*See* note under "Afar in the Desert."

Gliding . . giraffe — The construction is not good in this sentence; it is too much involved, leaving a doubt about the true connection of the words. It is better to parse "gliding" as qualifying "giraffe," rather than "head."

Stranger—The writer means that he had never seen the giraffe even when brought to England to show; he had only read of it, and dreamed about it.

Votaries of the chase—those who are very fond of hunting.

Eccentric—strange, unusual.

Disproportioned frame—This would mean that the various parts of the animal's body did not correspond to each other,—that the neck was too long for the body, the fore-legs too long in comparison with the hind legs, the shoulders and fore part of the body too large for the hinder part, etc.; and all this being the case the animal could not run gracefully.

Improving my acquaintance—What is meant?

Ogre in seven-league boots—Boys have read all about this monstrous giant in nursery tales, who delighted to feed on children, and who had a famous pair of boots in which he could take steps twenty-one miles long, but who was killed by a clever trick of a little boy called Hop-o'-my-thumb. Of course, in the extract the giraffe is the

ogre, and his long legs, with which he takes such great strides, are his seven-league boots.

Ever and anon—in quick succession.

The giraffe, etc.—This is another bad sentence; "giraffe" has no other word in construction with it; read 'the giraffe was now . . stride' and change "until" into "when"; or take away "until" altogether and the comma after "giraffe."

Hand over hand—rapidly,—as a man climbs a rope quickly who draws himself up with one hand while reaching forward with the other.

The cup . . lips—This is an expression used when we mean that a pleasure we are just on the point of enjoying, has been suddenly taken away from us;—just as if when we are certain of drinking, the cup being at our lips, it is suddenly dashed down. This comparison comes in badly here.

Lodged—This should be "lodging"—the "and" preceding it being omitted.

Lashing—the strings that bound the barrels of the rifle to the wooden stock.

Doubled . . half—a rather unusual expression.

Only—This word is wrongly placed; it should come after "trigger-guard."

Pocket-handkerchief—a strange word! It is composed of four different words—*pocket*, *hand*, and the two French ones *couvrir*, to cover; and *chef*, the head; the literal meaning would be 'a cover for the head used in the hand to be put in the pocket.' *See* the note on "Handkerchief" under "The Best Kind of Revenge."

Coup de grace—coo dĕ grass;—the finishing stroke,—an expression from old mediæval times, when a knight bent over his fallen enemy and finished killing him by a blow with his dagger.

As in . . nightmare—When people have the nightmare they often try to cry out, but find they can make no noise; they try to run, but their feet cling to the ground, and so on. *See* Chambers' Dictionary for "nightmare."

Tantalizing—*See* Chambers' Dictionary.

Hamstring—to cut the cords of the legs of an animal just below the hams.

Colossal . . pigmy—*See* the notes on these words under "The Victoria Bridge."

Welkin—the sky,—*clouds*, literally.

Kraal—a Hottentot village.

DISCOVERY OF THE CAPE OF GOOD HOPE.

King John—Columbus went to this king first to lay before him the plans for a voyage of discovery; but after a long stay Columbus left Lisbon in disgust, having found out that the king had used his information, maps, etc., to send out secretly an expedition on his own account.

Diaz—The bay in which Diaz anchored is Algoa Bay. Vasco de Gama was the favorite at court, and in 1497 was sent out on an expedition southward, having Diaz with him. The latter, however, was sent home from Cape Verde Islands; in 1500 he joined an expedition to Brazil, but was lost.

Prester John—That is, *presbyter* or *priest* John. He was a fabulous person of the middle ages, said to be a king of Abyssinia, who had renounced Mahommedanism and become a Christian. We read a very great deal about him in old books.

Venetian commerce—Venice was famous in the middle ages for its commerce, carried on with the eastern shores of the Mediterranean; much of the goods were brought to these places by caravans from the far east and south.

Fifty tons—*See* the note under "Voyage of the Golden Hind."

Proposals of Columbus—Columbus laid his plans before the king and the latter tried to make use of them without the knowledge of Columbus; but the expedition sent out failed. *See* the sketch of Columbus under "Discovery of America."

FALLS OF THE ZAMBESI.

The Rev. David Livingstone, the great African traveller and missionary, was born at Blantyre near Glasgow in 1817. As his father was poor David went to work in the cotton-mills, but eagerly studied all his spare time. By hard work he gained enough money to enable him to study at Glasgow during the winter, returning to the mills in

summer. He always intended to be a missionary, and with that view studied medicine as well as theology. He became a minister in 1840, and immediately set out for South Africa where he labored as a missionary at several stations till 1856. Previous to that year he had travelled far northward, to Linyanti and thence across to the west coast at Loanda; retracing his steps eastward he descended the Zambesi to the sea on the east coast, thus being the first white man to cross Africa. He returned to England in 1856 and wrote a full account of his journey; in 1858 he started on another expedition and returned in 1864. In 1865 he again went to Africa and as nothing was heard of him for a long time, expeditions were sent in search of him, one of which headed by Mr. Stanley was successful; but Livingstone had discoveries to make and so would not return. At last in 1873 news reached England that he had died on May 14 of that year, near lake Benguelo; his body was brought to England and buried in Westminster Abbey.

Sekeletu—the chief of the tribe, Makololo, near the falls of the Zambesi.

Hieroglyphic — literally, *sacred carvings*,—a species of writing in which animals, trees, etc., are employed instead of letters. Dr. Livingstone says, the palm, to him, meant "far from home."

Tunnel—a passage made through a hill, etc. There is a tunnel under the Thames by which people cross from one side of the river to the other.

Rainbows — These are always seen at waterfalls; but the spectator must be standing between the mist and the sun, otherwise he will see no bow.

Homogeneous—*See* the dictionary.

Barimo — bar-ē-mo—the god of the negroes.

THE ALMA RIVER.

The Most Rev. Richard Chevenix Trench, Archbishop of Dublin, born in 1807, first came into public notice as a writer of poetry. His writings, chiefly religious, are quite numerous; among the best known are, "Notes on the Parables," "Notes on the Miracles," "The Lessons in Proverbs"; he also published works on the study of English,—"The Study of Words," "English Past and Present," and others. Dr. Trench became archbishop of Dublin in 1864.

Alma—a small river in the Crimea, on whose banks the allied army (English and French) gained a brilliant victory over the Russians, September 20, 1854. *See* the History of England.

Unnamed, unhonored—Why?

Tartar—an Asiatic race who conquered and settled the southern part of Russia many centuries ago.

Voice for ever—an account of the victory of the allies.

Shrine—*See* the note under "The Baffled Traveller."

Streamlet—This word is in the nominative of address here.

Magic — *See* the note under "Parting with the Esquimaux."

The "magic" referred to is what follows—giving glory to the living who took part in the battle, making the memory of the slain famous.

All unsoothed their sorrow—"All" is an adverb modifying "unsoothed"; and "sorrow" is in the "absolute" construction with "being" understood.

Yea . . who can—The construction of this line is not clear; some words must be supplied; the simplest construction would be, "Yea, *there are those* who, their sorrow *being* all unsoothed, can," etc.

Blazon'd—inscribed, written; the meaning is, not that the name of Alma shall be inscribed literally on the banners of England, but that Alma shall ever be remembered by Englishmen. However, the names of the battles in which a regiment has taken part, are often written on its flags, literally.

Famous fields—Name some.

Are winning—'are being won,' rather.

Nerve them . . September—That is, the remembrance of what Englishmen did once at Alma will incite future Englishmen to do again.

LAMENT OF THE PERI FOR HINDA.

Moore—*See* the sketch under "The Lake of the Dismal Swamp."

Hinda—the lovely heroine in "The Fire-Worshippers," who drowned herself on the death of her lover. "The Fire-Worshippers" is one of the four tales making up "Lalla Rookh"; they are all Eastern tales.

Araby—Arabia; Hinda's father was the commander of the Mahommedan Arabian army engaged in the conquest and conversion of Persia.

Peri—In old Persian belief the Peris were a race of beautiful beings,—supposed to be descendants of the fallen angels,—and excluded from Paradise till they should atone for their sins.

Oman—the Persian Gulf.

Fair—This adjective qualifies "those" understood.

Sea-flower—a sea-animal growing fast to the rocks.

Like—an adverb here; "wind" is the subject of "comes" understood.

Wind of the south—"This wind (the Samoor) so softens the strings of lutes, that they can never be tuned while it lasts." Note under *Lalla Rookh.*

Lute—a musical stringed instrument resembling the guitar, and played with the fingers.

Hushed . . withered—"Witchery" is the subject of these verbs.

Sea-star—"One of the greatest curiosities found in the Persian Gulf is a fish which the English call Star-fish. It is circular, and at night very luminous, resembling the full moon surrounded by rays." Note under *Lalla Rookh.*

Date-season—Where do we get our dates from.

Iran—the old name of Persia.

Beloved of her hero—"Her" refers to Iran, and "hero" to Hinda's lover, Hafed, who died for his country. Instead of *of* we now, for the most part, use *by* in this construction.

Shrine—*See* the note under "The Baffled Traveller";—the shrine here is the heart.

Close . . set thee—That is, Iran will always think of Hinda and Hafed together.

Amber . . wept—"Some naturalists have imagined that amber is the concretion (hardening) of the tears of birds." Note to *Lalla Rookh.* Amber is now known to be fossil resin.

Coral—a hard, stony, porous substance found in the sea, and formed by an insect from minute particles contained in the water; it takes various shapes sometimes resembling a brain, but most commonly consists of a vast mass of interlaced branches; its color is usually white, but rosy and black colors are often met with. Vast reefs and islands—as the Bermudas, and most of the Pacific islands—are formed of coral. *See* the note on "Coral" under "The Veteran Tar."

Sands . . gold—"The bay Kieselarke, which is otherwise called the Golden Bay, the sand whereof shines like fire." Note to *Lalla Rookh.*

ASKELON.

Sultan Bibars—a renowned Memlook sultan of Egypt who did a very great deal for the good of the country, but was very cruel in his wars, especially against Christians. He reigned during the crusading times from A.D. 1230 to 1298.

Scourge—How can a man be a *scourge?*

Amphitheatre—*See* Chambers' Dictionary.

Salient angle—an angle of a fort projecting outwards.

Dr. Kitto—a writer of some celebrity on biblical subjects, was born in 1804; his parents being poor he was sent to learn shoemaking; but his taste for reading gained him friends who sent him to college. He afterwards spent some years in travelling and on returning to England began his literary labors. Among other books he wrote a History of Palestine, Cyclopœdia of Biblical Literature; he also published a Pictorial Bible. He died in 1854.

Canticles—the Song of Solomon—in the Bible.

NOTE.—"The Land and the Book" is the name of a highly interesting account of a number of years' residence in the Holy Land, written by an American missionary named Thompson.

THE SPONGE.

Cyclades—islands in the Ægean sea, arranged in a somewhat *circular* form.
Carian coast—the south-west corner of Asia Minor.
Calymnos—an island off the south-west coast of Asia Minor.
Rhodes—*See* the note under "The Victoria Bridge."
Caiques—a kind of boat.
Tons—*See* the note under "Voyage of the Golden Hind."
Burthen—"Burden" is another form of this word.
Bent a rope—a sea term meaning "to fasten."
Frigate—*See* the note under "Taking of Gibraltar."
Okes—An "oke" is a Turkish weight of about 2¾ pounds English.
Drachms—The drachma is worth 8½ pence sterling.
Aristotle—a celebrated Greek philosopher, died in B.C. 323.
Economic purposes—"Economic" here means 'useful to man,'—in manufactures, etc.
Achilles—a most famous Greek legendary hero.
Crustaceæ—crus-tā-see-ee;—shell-fish.

RICHARD THE LION-HEART.

Thomas Roscoe—an English writer of considerable repute; died in 1871.
King Richard—*See* the History of England.
Sultan—the famous Saladin.
Prophet—Mahomet. *See* the extract on Mahomet—Fourth Reader.

THE CEDAR OF LEBANON.

Lebanon—Where and what is "Lebanon"?
Jardin des Plantes—jar-da(n) day plahnte—"j" like "s" in "*pleasure*";—the botanical gardens. *See* the note under "A Visit to the Botanic Gardens of St. Vincent."
Menagerie—*See* Chambers' Dictionary.
True Light—Christ.

THE LEPER.

N. P. Willis, born at Portland, Maine in 1807, was a celebrated American writer whose works appeared for the most part in magazines of which he was editor—"The American Monthly Magazine," "New York Mirror," and lastly the "Home Journal." He resided in England for a time in the service of the United States. His writings are quite numerous;—"People I Have Met," "Hurrygraphs," "Rag Bag," "Paul Fane," are some of them. His sister, who is best known under the name of *Fanny Fern*, was a more popular writer still. He died in 1867.

Leprosy—*See* "The Lazaretto at Tracadie" and the notes under it.
Unclean—Under Jewish law the leper has to stay apart from other people; he was not to drink of a brook that flowed to a dwelling; he could not come to a place of worship. Read carefully Leviticus xiii. and xiv.
Symbol—a crown, probably.
Crouched to—Supply "which,"—'which a lion would have crouched to.'
Impress—stamp, appearance.

MAHOMET.

Bedouin—bed-oo-eén.
Worship of sun—*See* the note on "Children of the Sun" under "Discovery of America."
Gabriel—the angel that appeared to the Virgin Mary.
Vizier—*See* the dictionary.
Reckoned the years—Where do we start to reckon our years?
Red-handed—bloody.
Key of heaven and hell—That is, as all Moslems would be saved; and the

fear of being killed made people turn Moslems, therefore the sword opened heaven; and if people would not turn Moslems then they would be killed, and hell would open to receive them;—and so the sword would be said to be like a key, caused hell and heaven to be opened.

Lucknow—In the terrible mutiny of the native soldiers in India in 1857, a small garrison of British soldiers was besieged by over 60,000 rebels, till relieved by Havelock.

Cawnpore—The garrison of this town during the same mutiny, was induced to surrender under the promise of being allowed to depart safely down the river; but all were murdered.

Gigantic lie—because heaven is not gained by merely practising a certain kind of religion; nor are people lost because they don't worship in a certain way.

Elastic spirit—When we press an india-rubber ball it flattens, but immediately recovers itself on the pressure being removed, and is as round as ever,—all resulting from its elasticity; so Mahomet, though for a while dejected by his defeat, became very soon again as bold and confident as ever.

Moat—*See* the note under "The Village Garrison."

Eastern empire—The Roman empire (*See* the note under "Falls of Niagara"), after many subdividings and rëunions, finally split into two in the year 800, when the king of the Franks, Charles (Charlemagne) was crowned at Rome by the pope, Emperor of the West. The other part of the empire was known by the name of The Eastern Empire—including modern Turkey, Greece, Asia Minor, etc.;—the capital was Constantinople. The old Greek city Byzantium was rebuilt in A.D. 328 by the emperor Constantine, who named it New Rome, and made it the capital of the whole empire. In later times people called this new city after the emperor's name.

INTERIOR OF AN ANCIENT PALACE IN NINEVAH.

The Right Honorable A. H. Layard was born in 1817. He early showed a decided inclination for oriental study, and during a tour in the East in 1839 he formed the plan of excavations on the site of ancient Nineveh. In 1845 he set out on his work and made some wonderful discoveries, transferring numerous specimens of ancient Assyrian art to the British Museum in London. Since 1848 he has held several important offices under the government both at home and abroad, always preferring those that dealt with questions of the East. He takes a deep interest in all the dealings of England with the eastern countries. At present (1878) he is ambassador at Constantinople. In 1848-9 Mr. Layard published an account of his explorations under the title of "Ninevah and its Remains."

Ninevah—*See* Genesis x. 8-11; and also the Book of Jonah for an idea of its great size. This city is said to have been utterly destroyed by fire at its capture by the Medes and Babylonians, B.C. 606. *See* note on "Assyria" under "Ocean."

Magnificent, imposing—The first of these words means *grand, splendid*; the second, *capable of making a deep impression, striking.*

Colossal—*See* the note on "colossus" under "The Victoria Bridge."

Alabaster—very soft marble, almost transparent when white and cut very thin; alabaster of other colors is sometimes met with. *See* Matthew xxvi. 7.

Sculptured records—history, or records, not written with letters, but with pictures cut in stone.

Triumphs—processions of victorious troops.

Inscriptions—These were made in letters shaped like a wedge, sometimes called "cuniform." A great many thousands of tiles (or slates) bearing these inscriptions, have from time to time been brought to England; they have been lately translated into English, and contain an account of the creation of the world, and the story of the flood, wonderfully like the Bible narrative.

Presiding divinities—the gods who had particular charge of persons or places.

Ideal animals—animals not existing in reality, but only imagined to exist:—such as the unicorn on the British coat of arms, and the double-headed eagle on that of Austria, etc.

THE DESTRUCTION OF SENNACHERIB.

Byron—*See* the sketch under "Ocean."

The Assyrian — The whole account of the invasion of Judah by Sennacherib should be read from the Bible, 2 Kings xviii. 13, etc. *See* note on "Ninevah" under "Interior of an Ancient Palace."

Cohorts—*See* Chambers' Dictionary.

Autumn hath blown — Is this to be taken literally?

Angel of Death — It is supposed that the host was destroyed by a poisonous wind from the desert, by the overruling of God.

Ashur—*See* Genesis x. 8-11.

Broke—broken.

Baal— the great god of the Phœnicians.

Gentile — The Jews called all other nations Gentiles.

Unsmote—unsmitten.

GOOD ADVICE NOT TO BE DESPISED.

Dervise — spelled also *dervis, dervish.* *See* Chambers' Dictionary.

Dinar—a coin.

Sire—a title of respect given to kings.

Plate—gold and silver ware.

Vizier—chief adviser, or counsellor.

THE SIEGE OF DELHI.

Samuel Smiles, now (1878) sixty-two years old, has given to English literature a great number of valuable works—"The Life of George Stephenson," "Self Help," "Lives of the Engineers," "Industrial Biography," "The Huguenots," etc. The greater part of his writings deal with the working classes, their great achievements, their state, etc. His latest work (1878) is "George Moore, Merchant and Philanthropist."

Gigantic struggle—the Indian Mutiny of 1857. It is yet doubtful what was the pretext for this terrible uprising of the sepoys; but the chief cause was the desire on the part of the Mahommedans to overthrow the English power. *See* the History of England.

Lucknow—The garrison was reinforced by Havelock, and afterwards relieved by Campbell.

Ostensibly-in appearance, not in reality.

Tenacity of purpose — determination to succeed,—*sticking at it* till accomplished.

Defences—fortifications.

Avoided defeat-Captain Hodson means any other nation *would have been defeated,* — they would *not be able to avoid defeat.*

Deadly breach—The gates were blown in by bags of gunpowder being hung on them and fired.

Proved their manhood—showed that they were brave.

Men of England—Mr. Smiles says that whatever great things England has produced, *Englishmen,* whether the common people or those of the upper classes, are the greatest of all her products. Compare "The Road to the Trenches."

THE PEARL FISHERIES OF CEYLON.

The Rev. Sydney Smith, born in 1769, died in 1845, was one of the wittiest of Englishmen; he was a very eloquent preacher, drawing crowds to his church who never went away uninstructed; throughout his whole life it was his aim, in his own peculiar way, 'to fight against evil' in every form. His pen was ever busy; in connection with Brougham, and Jeffrey, he founded the "Edinburgh Review." Liberal in his views, he strove hard to overthrow tyranny and trickery wherever they appeared; it is said that his amusing "Letters of Peter Plymley" did more to gain freedom for Catholics than any other publication of the time.

Bight — How does a bight differ from a gulf or a bay?

Castes — classes of people belonging to the same nation.

Bank—high ground beneath the water. *See* the note on "fishing-banks" under "The Great Auk."

Hawking—*See* "hawker" in Chambers' Dictionary.

Drilling, etc. — so that they may be strung on strings.

Government—of India.

Pagoda—a gold and also a silver coin in India valued at from $1.94 to $2.18. "Pagōda" is also the name of a kind of Hindoo temple.

Dutch — The Dutch own many East Indian islands, including Java and Sumatra. Ceylon belonged to them till 1815, when it came into possession of the English.

Perquisite — pér-quis-it;—something, money or otherwise, obtained in addition to regular pay, or what was legally due.

Eat and be eaten—In applying this rule to man it would be 'As man eats the weaker animals, so *he* must expect to be eaten by a stronger, if he comes in the way of such.' The witty style of the rest of the extract will be appreciated by the pupils.

Obtains—exists.

One appetite—the shark's, for the Hindoos.

Fortune — chance; the author means that the pearl divers often get into danger, and that it often happens they obtain no pearls.

Conjurors — persons who profess to have more than human power, and who, for money, will exert their powers for other people.

Enigmatical grimaces — twistings of the face whose meaning it is hard to guess.

Ostracize—Mr. Smith is making a joke here. In ancient Athens it was customary when a man was deemed dangerous to the state, to write his name on a *shell*, and if these were in sufficient number the man had to leave the city,—and he was said to be *ostracized* (banished)—Greek *ostrakon*, a shell. Now, these sharks were interfering with men gathering *shells*, and so it would be a good thing to *ostracize*,—banish, or *shell*—them off, and the persons who could do this were paid in *shells*, or the product of shells,—pearls.

A DAY IN BANGKOK.

Bangkok—usually spelled "Bankok."

Awoke—Is this correct?

Dire emblems—In the East, yellow is used to indicate a person or place attacked by the plague.

Either side—We usually say on "both sides,"—either meaning *one* out of *two*, not *both*.

Malgré lui — mal-gray-l'wē;—a French expression meaning 'in spite of himself.'

Betel-nut — The bētel is an evergreen whose leaf, together with a little lime, is wrapped round the areca nut and chewed. It gives a red color to lips, teeth, and spittle. This practice is universal in all countries bordering on the Indian Ocean. Europeans cannot get accustomed to it.

Floating houses—At Bankok and many other cities in Farther India and China a very large part of the population live in houses built on rafts.

Short . . twilight—In tropical climates there is scarcely any twilight; the farther we go from the tropics the longer the twilight. The poet Coleridge, in his "Ancient Mariner," refers to this absence of twilight in the tropics:

"The sun's rim dips, the stars *rush* out,
At *one stride* comes the dark."

THE DEATH OF MAGELLAN.

Ferdinand Magellan was a Portuguese by birth, but not being appreciated by his own country, he entered the service of the Emperor Charles V. who employed him to find a western passage from Spain to the Moluccas. He started on the expedition in 1519 and was the first to enter the Pacific ocean,—this he did through the strait that now bears his name. *See* the note on "Pacific" under "The Hudson Bay Company."

The 7th of April—in the year 1521.
Cuirasses — protections for the breast, made originally of *leather* — French, *cuir*.
Nautical charts—maps of the sea.
As he proved—"As" seems to be a pronoun here, equivalent to *which*.

DISCOVERY OF AUSTRALIA.

Eendracht—ĕn-drakt.
Made the west coast — saw or discovered it. *See* the map of Australia in last edition of Campbell's Geography, for the names of places mentioned in the extract.
Dirk Hatichs—deerk hah-ticks.
Hertoge—hair-tōg-ĕh.
Roadstead — an anchorage in an open place.
Zeachen—tsee-ken.
Leuwin—loo-win.
De Nuitz—dĕh nights.
Southerly insulation — That is, that Australia was an island as far as the southern part was concerned.
Convicts were deported—Until within the last twenty years England used to send a certain class of her criminals out to Australia and Tasmania ; this was called *transportation*.
Smith O'Brien — *See* the History of England, reign of Victoria.
Cook — *See* the sketch under "History of Vancouver Island."
Stadthouse—town hall.
States-General—the Dutch parliament, —often used for Holland itself.
Buccaneers—*See* "The Buccaneers"—Fourth Reader.
Characteristic—that which in any way distinguishes a place or person from all others.
The genus — the race of plânts that Dampier named Rosemary.
Perennial herbaceous-*See* Chambers' Dictionary.
Humboldt—*See* the sketch under "The Earthquake of Caraccas."
Malte-Brun — mal-tĕ broon ; — a celebrated Danish poet, political writer and geographer. He died in 1826.
Prince among observers—As a prince is superior to ordinary men, so Dampier was superior to ordinary observers.

THE LARK AT THE DIGGINGS.

Charles Reade is one of our most voluminous novel writers. "Love Me Little, Love Me Long," "White Lies," "Hard Cash," "Griffith Gaunt," "A Terrible Temptation," are a few of his works.

Squatter — one who settles down on land without owning it. They are always numerous in new countries.
English was written—That is, everything around the house showed that the owner was English ;- there were English fences, gates, trees, lawn, etc.
Lark — "Tom" evidently thought that by "lark" his friend meant sport, fun, etc.
Sotto voce—sot-tō vō-chā ;—Italian for 'in a low tone.' The lark is an English bird.
Unbridled hearts — men who did not restrain themselves, but acted as they pleased, no matter who suffered,- as a run-away horse cares not what he does.
Bronzed—How?
Dulce domum—dul-sĕ dō-mum,—Latin for "sweet home"—a Latin song sung by the boys of Westminster school on going home for holidays.

THE WRECK OF THE ORPHEUS.

Slack'ning hands — people unable to cling to the shrouds any longer.
To swerve—to abandon their duty.
Steamer's deck—the one that came to the relief of the sinking vessel.
But death met-Read 'but *it was* death met,' etc.—"met" being a participle qualifying "death."
For us—Supply some verb after "us,"—as *are*, remain, etc.; and also after *them*.
Be thy broad, etc. — The writer says

that 'as long as England has such sailors, she will be the mistress of the seas, no matter whether her soldiers on land are victorious or not.'

Mistress of the seas—*See* the note on "Lord of thee" under "Ocean."

NOTE.—A few years ago a vessel having a large number of passengers on board, including a body of soldiers, was wrecked in the English Channel; the officer in command of the soldiers drew up his men as if on parade; the other passengers were rescued; the soldiers, keeping their ranks, and cheering as the final plunge was given, went down with the vessel.

FIGHT WITH A KANGAROO.

Kangaroo—The huge tail of the animal helps it greatly in leaping.

Bay—*See* the note on "Stands at bay" under "The Western Hunter."

Impunity—without being punished.

Sporting Review—the name of a periodical devoted to matters concerning hunting, fishing, racing, etc.

Unceremonious — without caring for form or ceremony, but going right at a thing.

To its revenge—We don't use this expression often; we say rather "to revenge it."

Fell swoop—terrible blow.

White ants—a species of ant very common in Africa and Australia. They build large conical houses out of clay.

All but—*See* Abbott's "How to Parse."

Giant embrace—How so?

A NEW ZEALAND CHIEF.

Nene—nay-nay.

Regular colonization — In 1815 the first missionary station in New Zealand was established at the Bay of Islands; the country became a British colony in 1840 by the request of the natives themselves.

New Zealand—*See* Discovery of Australia—Fourth Reader.

Captain Cook sailed round this island in 1769 and took possession of it in the name of Great Britain. The length from north to south is over 1100 miles; its breadth from 15 to 150. *See* the geography.

Etiquette—manners in society.

Pah—a fortified village in New Zealand.

Part . . life — Life is here said to be a dream or play, in which each person acts his part, as the actors and actresses do in a play in a theatre.

Kete—kay-tay.

Moliti—mol-ē-tē.

Waitangi — wah-e-tan-gee ("g" as in "good"). By this treaty with the chiefs New Zealand became a British colony.

Heki—hek-ee.

Conduct—skill.

But for him—'had it not been for him.'

THE CORAL GROVE.

Coral—*See* the note under "Lament of the Peri."

Sea-flower — a marine animal fixed to rocks. *See* the note under "Lament of the Peri."

Drift—the white snow.

Flaky snow—the white, sandy bottom of the sea.

Sea-plants—Some species of coral look very much like shrubs; others, line fans, the brain, etc.

Tides — *See* the note under "The Coal Fields of Nova Scotia."

Myriad voices—What are they?

Spirit of storms — It was long a belief that storms were caused by witches or evil spirits; the wind had its god as well as the storms had.

Wind-god frowns — referring to the dark look of the clouds during high wind.

Demons—as if the wreck and loss of life were the work of evil spirits.

And is safe—Deep soundings show that the bottom is quite free from disturbance, however heavy the sea on the surface may be.

THE JOURNEYING OF THE ISRAELITES.

A year . . departure—This departure (or exodus) took place in B.C. 1491, according to the accepted chronology. *See* the Book of Exodus.

Sinai—in the north-west of Arabia.

Fruitful land—Canaan or Palestine.

Promised — because promised to Abraham. *See* Genesis xii. 6, 7.

Judah—Name the twelve tribes.

Caleb—*See* the story in Numbers xiii.

Colossal — the sons of Anak. *See* the note on "Colossus of Rhodes" under "The River St. Lawrence."

Canker of slavery — As the canker destroys plants, so slavery destroys manhood.

Miriam—sister of Moses.

Edomites—the descendants of Esau.

Divinations — sorceries, witchcraft, magic, etc.

Deuteronomy — a *repetition* of what the Israelites had undergone, etc.

Impious gratitude — It would be impious to worship a mere creature, however grateful we might be to him.

Divine honors—We all think highly of great men; and in ancient days it was the custom to regard these men after their death, as gods.

NOTE.—The teacher should follow thi narrative through the Bible, and eithe read it to the pupils, or read it with them.

THE INQUIRY.

Charles Mackay, born in 1814, has been a very regular contributor to a number of magazines and newspapers; he has written many poems, sketches, essays, etc., and holds a high place among literary men.

ENOCH WALKED WITH GOD

Walked—*See* Genesis v. 22-24.

To count—in construction with "trod," —adverbial.

Noon of manhood-As noon is the middle part of the day, so manhood,—say at 40 years of age,—is the middle part of life.

Shepherd king — In those old times there was land enough for all, and these rich men—rich in cattle and servants (slaves) and food, etc., were the subjects of no ruler.

No cloud . . decay — referring to the usual accompaniments of death.

The spoiler's rod-The *spoiler* is death; the *rod* is his sceptre; death is called a king as he has power over all things; and a sceptre is the sign of power. Enoch did not bow to death,—he never died, but was taken away to heaven.

Night—death.

Closed . . way—'No one now can go to heaven without first dying; but people *do* go to heaven now for the *very same* reason that Enoch did,—walking with God,—loving him and striving to do as He says.'

THE PASSAGE OF THE RED SEA.

They come — This is the cry of the Israelites as they see the host of the Egyptians advancing. *See* the whole story of the flight from Egypt in Exodus xiv.

Scythe — driven into the ends of the axles of the war-chariots.

Portending—threatening, foretelling.

For a moment—"For" connects "they pause" and "moment."

Like . . torrent-"Like" is an adjective qualifying "they,"—two lines below; supply "to" before "torrent."

Thou Mighty, etc. — In the following stanza the Israelites cry to God for help.

Lo! 'twixt—The remainder of the poem is a description, as if by an on-looker, of what follows on the cry for help. *See* Exodus xiv. 19, 20.

Egypt—Is this to be taken literally?

Their feet—the feet of the Israelites.

Prophet-chief—Who?

Coral—*See* "The Coral Grove" with the notes.

Ocean—Is the *ocean* really meant?

Streams—What streams? Is it the proper word?

Pharaoh—not the *name* of a king but merely a *title*, like our word *emperor*, etc.

Chivalry—brave men.

Mists of heaven—darkness.

Lonely shore — Why does the writer call the shore *lonely*?

Of ages long before — where they had slept for long ages before.

Timeless graves—We usually say *untimely*,—perishing before the natural time. 'An untimely flower' is one that blooms too early, and so 'an untimely grave' is the grave of one who has died before the usual age.

Israel's hymn—*See* Exodus xv. 1-20.

Israel's maids—*See* Exodus xv. 20, 21.

THE BURIAL OF MOSES.

Nebo—*See* Deuteronomy xxxiv. 1.

This side—the eastern side.

No man knows, etc.—*See* Deuteronomy xxxiv. 5, 6.

Perchance—The poet says in this stanza that perhaps the beast or the bird saw what man could not see.

Eyrie—*See* Chambers' Dictionary.

Arms reversed — Soldiers at funerals carry their guns with the muzzles behind them pointing downward.

Minute gun — the cannon firing every minute, as at other funerals the church-bell tolls every minute.

Amid the noblest—Westminster Abbey is referred to; there England's great in every noble calling in life are laid to rest.

Transept—*See* Chambers' Dictionary.

Lights like glories—The light, colored by coming through the stained windows, resembles the "glories," or halos, sometimes seen around the sun before a storm, or which painters are accustomed to put around the heads of saints, etc.

Emblazoned—*See* the dictionary.

Truest warrior — Moses obeyed God's command;—he led a vast host from slavery to freedom; he fought, not with the sword, for God against the weakness of the Israelites; he fought not for himself but for the good of others.

Gifted poet — *See* the song of Moses, Exodus xv.

Philosopher — A philosopher's great duty is to teach others. Moses taught how to gain eternal life.

Golden pen — We must not take this literally; 'as gold is a very precious metal, so the truths that the philosopher writes are very precious';—the "pen" is used here to mean what the pen writes.

Lie in state — When a great personage dies, the body, prepared for burial, is placed on a bed, etc., or in a coffin, in a large room, so that those who wish, may go and see it. This is called 'lying in state.'

Hills he never trod—those of the Holy Land. The reference is to the transfiguration of Christ on the mount. We are told in Luke ix. 30, 31, that "Behold there talked with him two men which were Moses and Elias: who appeared in glory, and spake of his decease which he should accomplish at Jerusalem."

Speak of the strife — The order is 'speak with the Son of God of the strife,' etc.

Curious hearts — enquiring, restless hearts.

THE SETTLEMENT OF THE ISRAELITES IN CANAAN.

Assuming—This word is in construction with no noun or pronoun expressed, nor can one be supplied very well. It would be better to say "if we assume," etc.

Hebrew chiefs—Name some.

Levites — What office did they hold? They had forty-eight cities.

Year of Jubilee — *See* Leviticus xxv. 8, etc.

Melancholy war—*See* Judges xx.

SONG OF MIRIAM.

Moore — *See* the sketch under "The Lake of the Dismal Swamp."

Sound, etc.—*See* Exodus, xv. 20, 21.

His word . . sword — God destroyed the Egyptians by a word,—as if it had been an arrow or sword.

HISTORY OF THE ISRAELITES.

Demanded a king—*See* 1 Samuel viii., etc. This sketch should be followed through the Bible narrative by the teacher.

Qualities—What were they?

Gilboa—*See* 1 Samuel xxxi.

God's own heart — *See* 1 Samuel xiii. 14; Acts xiii. 22.

Temple — the grand place of sacrifice and worship.

Commodity—grain.

FROM THE REVOLT TILL THE CAPTIVITY.

Emblems—Golden calves. *See* the Bible narrative.

Gentile—all who were not Jews.

Assyria—*See* the note under "Ocean," and also under "Interior of an Ancient Palace in Ninevah."

Nebuchadnezzar—*See* the story of this king in the Book of Daniel.

Reins of government—As a person by means of the reins directs a horse, so he who guides or directs the government, may be said to have the 'reins of government.'

Lord paramount—the superior ruler—one ruler who has authority over another ruler.

USE THE PEN.

Magic—*See* the note under "Parting with the Esquimaux." The pen has magic because it can convey the thoughts of one man to every quarter of the globe.

Chaos of the mind—*Chaos* means *confusion;* and the mind may be called a chaos from the great number of thoughts busy in it. The magic of the pen can pick out any one of these thoughts and put it on paper.

But the gems . . lie—The meaning is that we should write the thoughts that rise in our mind, for they may be of real value, like gems, and should not be lost.

Many an ocean cave—Compare stanza 14 of "Gray's Elegy," Fourth Reader. This stanza contains the idea referred to in the preceding note.

Pearl of thought—Explain the meaning.

Sword alone — perhaps in the feudal days.

Lion-hearted — How can a brave man be called "lion-hearted"?

All unknown—Why are they unknown?

Stamps the form, etc. — referring to photography.

Enshrined—enclosed. *See* the note on "Shrine" under the "Baffled Traveller."

Daguerreotypes — In 1839 a French painter and chemist named Daguerre (dah-gair) invented the process of taking pictures on metal plates; this process received his name. Great improvements have since been made, and the art is now called by the name of "photography."

The pen is greater than this power of the sun; for the sun can transfer the form and features only, but the pen can transfer,—or photograph,—thought, and the mind.

Death-black ink — Slander is said to blacken and so kill the good name of people.

Strains . . Homer—Homer, the great Greek poet who wrote the Iliad and Odyssey, is said to have lived about 800 years before Christ. The Iliad is regarded by many as the greatest poetical work in existence.

THE HOUR OF DEATH.

Hemans — *See* the sketch under "A Song of Emigration."

Mortal care—the business of life.

Softer tears — tears of happiness, or love.

Summer birds . . sea—Mrs. Hemans was writing in England; with us in Canada the "summer birds" do not come from "across the sea," though they *do* come "from far"—from the far south to which so many of them,—the robins, the finches, the swallows, the blackbirds,—go to escape our long, cold winters.

To rest—in construction with "meets."

FROM THE RESTORATION OF THE JEWS, ETC.

Foretold by the prophets—*See* Jeremiah xxix. 10.

Christian era — When was that, and why?

Zerubbabel—Accent the second syllable strongly. *See* the books of Nehemiah and Ezra for an account of the return, etc., of the Jews.

Urim and Thummim — *See* Exodus xxviii. 30. Some say these were the four rows of precious stones in the priest's breastplate; others say they were two images in the breastplate by means of which God gave oracles to the people.

Shechinah—or "shekinah" (she-kō-na); among the Jews, the visible evidence of God's presence, in the shape of a bright cloud resting on the mercy-seat.

Obsolete—out of use.

Persian satraps — As the Persians and Medes under Cyrus in B.C. 538, overthrew the Assyrian empire by the capture of Babylon, all the territories of that empire came under the Persian sway,—Judea among the rest. The governors of the Persian provinces were called *satraps*.

Cyrus—Cyrus, son of a Persian noble and the daughter of the Median king Astyages, headed a successful revolt against the Medes in B.C. 559. He then became king of both nations, and extended his empire far and wide, subduing all modern Turkey in Asia and a great deal more to the east and north. He died in B.C. 529.

Material change—a change of importance.

Alexander—*See* the sketch under "The Natural Bridge."

Syro-Macedonian—That is, consisting of Syria and Macedonia. Alexander wished to blend all the conquered nations into one. Judea became a province of this kingdom.

Dynasty—We usually say now house, family, line;—as the House of Brunswick, the House of Stuart. The dynasty, or house, etc., referred to in the text, is the Macedonian line of kings called the Ptolemies.

Allegiance—*See* the note under "The Conquest of Peru."

Inalienable heritage — property or inheritance of which they could not be deprived—which could not be *given to another*. As the Jews claimed Palestine to be such heritage, they would be apt to fight desperately if anyone should try to drive them from it; hence their masters, the Macedonian kings of Syria, were anxious to please them.

Antiochus Epiphanes—an-tī-ō-kus e-pif-an-ees;—he reigned from B.C. 175 to 164.

Sacrificed a sow — To the Jews swine were the most unclean of animals; hence the act of the king was one of contempt for the Jews and their God.

Holy of holies—*See* Hebrews ix. 1-7.

Dispute . . Palestine — to contend which should have the rule; it generally implies that the disputants are nearly matched.

Pontiff—high-priest.

Pompey—a renowned Roman commander, who after various exploits was appointed commander against the pirates that infested the Mediterranean; these, however, he completely destroyed in three months; then having completed the subjection of Asia Minor to the Romans, he passed southward and annexed Syria to the Roman empire and thence to Judea in B.C. 63. He afterwards, in connection with Cæsar, obtained chief power at Rome; but after a few years a quarrel led to a war between these two, which ended in the defeat of Pompey at Pharsalia in Greece; he was murdered shortly afterwards in Egypt whither he had fled.

Cæsar — *See* the sketch under "The Natural Bridge."

Antipater—an-tip-ă-ter.

Hyrcanus—hear-cān-us.

Idumean—I-du-mé-an.

FROM THE BIRTH OF CHRIST, ETC.

Archelaus—ar-kee-lā-us.
Prefecture—governorship.
Cyrenius—*See* Luke ii. 2.
Image of the emperor—The Jews had a most violent hatred of anything that seemed to them idolatry.
Samaritans — people of Samaria. For the origin of these people *see* 2 Kings xvii. 24, etc. *See* also 1 Kings xvi. 23, 24.
The motive—*See* the trial of Christ in the gospels.
Herod-Agrippa — king of Judea, and persecutor of the Christians. *See* Acts xii. throughout.
Caligula—third emperor of Rome.
Tiberius—the second emperor of Rome.
Tetrarchy—*See* Chambers' Dictionary.
Gaul—modern France for the most part.
Claudius—fourth emperor of Rome.
Bernice—ber-ni-see.
Procurator—overseers, agents.
Free-quarter—living in whatever house they pleased and paying nothing.
Cesarea—ses-ar-é-a.
Cohorts—companies.
Legionary — belonging to the Roman legion—a body of soldiers varying from 4000 to 6000 men.
Nero—fifth emperor of Rome.
Vespasian — He became emperor o Rome in A.D. 70.
Moderate concession — a yielding in some extent to the demands of others.
Titus—became emperor in A.D. 79, and reigned two years; from his great goodness he was called 'the delight of mankind.'

JERUSALEM BEFORE THE SIEGE.

The Very Rev. Henry Hart Milman, dean of St. Paul's (died 1868), has given to English literature many important works, such as,—"History of the Jews," "History of Christianity," "History of Latin Christianity," etc.

Confounds . . philosophy—The belief (philosophy) of Titus was, perhaps, that the gods would not allow such a place to perish, and yet he saw himself on the point of destroying it.
Ruins . . sown on—When the Romans intended that a city should be destroyed and never rebuilt, they passed a plough over some part of it and sowed it with salt,—the salt signifying utter desolation, since nothing grows from salt.
Olive . . hill — the Mount of Olives. Olives are a berry growing on trees, and yielding a great deal of oil.
Kedron—What other brook or pool was near Jerusalem?
Sanctuary, etc. — Titus says that the temple rises up as if finding a holy, sacred place in the heavens.
Mount of snow—the towers on the roof were covered with marble.
Fretted—adorned.
Capital—top of a pillar.

PALESTINE.

Reginald Heber, born in 1783, died in 1826, became bishop of Calcutta in 1822, and labored as faithfully in the discharge of his duties there as he had done when a simple minister in England. He made a tour through the whole of his territory on purpose to examine into the state of the people. He wrote many beautiful poems;—among the rest "From Greenland's Icy Mountains"; "Palestine" was a prize poem written at Oxford in 1803.

Foes—the Turks.
Sion — the name of one of the hills of Jerusalem on which David's palace was built.
Widowed queen—deprived of all glory, and power. Jerusalem was the 'queen city' of Palestine.
Kings . . viewed—*See* the visit of the queen of Sheba to Solomon.
Kings subdued—*See* the wars of David, especially.
Prophet-bards—A great many parts of the books of the Bible written by the prophets are in poetry;—as almost the whole of Isaiah.
Cold Oblivion—as if the inhabitants of modern Jerusalem forget all its ancient glory.
Ivy shade—Ivy grows over ruins,—as if to hide them and so make it appear that no building had ever been there.

FALLEN IS THY THRONE.

Moore — *See* the sketch under "The Lake of the Dismal Swamp."

Fallen is thy throne — the power is destroyed.

Weep in chains—That is, they are not free; they live not in their own land.

Etham, etc. —*See* Exodus xvi. 1, etc.

That fire—What fire?

Love Jerusalem — *See* the account of Christ's weeping over Jerusalem.

Olive-tree — the Hebrew nation. *See* Jeremiah xi. 16.

Salem—Jeru*salem*.

Shrine — altars. *See* the note under "The Baffled Traveller."

Other gods — Mr. Moore refers to the introduction of idolatry among the Israelites. Solomon, in a measure, allowed it.

Star of Solyma—an allusion to the old science of Astrology, which taught that the destiny of everyone was under the control of a star. "Solyma," no doubt, refers to Jerusalem the city made so glorious by Solomon.

Baal—the god of the Tyrians.

Go, said the Lord- The Turks were the last and fiercest conquerors of Judea; before them came the crusaders, who conquered it from the Saracens or Arabians; these latter had taken it from the Roman empire.

Hinnom —a valley near Jerusalem in which dead bodies were burned. *See* Jeremiah vii. 32.

THE SAVIOUR.

Montgomery — *See* the sketch under "The West Indian Islands."

He comes—*See* Isaiah xlii.

To give—adverbial to "he comes."

Turn—an infinitive.

Whose—The antecedent is "their."

As such—What?

Through — in construction with "shall be feared."

Arabia's desert ranger — The Arabs are Mahommedans.

Ethiopian—The negroes are heathens.

NOTE.—The whole of this poem describes the blessed things that attend the gradual spread of the true worship of Christ.

A PSALM OF LIFE.

Longfellow — *See* the sketch under "Hiawatha's Sailing."

Mournful numbers- sorrowful songs.

The grave . . goal—'Life does not end at the death of the body.'

Was not—What is the subject of "was"?

Dust—Where is this found?

Not enjoyment . . way—We are not made merely to endure sorrow or live in enjoyment; we have a higher purpose in life.

Find us—*may* find.

Art is long—Things that might be done by man are very numerous.

Muffled drums—Drums whose sound is deadened by something wrapped round them, are used at the funeral of military men.

Funeral . . grave — The poet means that every beat of the heart brings us nearer death.

World . . battle — How is the world a field of battle for us?

Bivouac — The poet terms our life a *bivouac*—a short stay, an encampment for a night.

Trust no Future . . dead — The poet exhorts us to work *now*, not look back with regret to the past, saying 'if I only had worked'; nor look forward saying 'I'll work bye and bye.'

We can make our lives—Put a strong stress on "our."

Footprints, etc.—As the tracks on the ground tell that somebody has passed that way, so the good we do to the world, will show that *we* have lived.

Footprints, that—The first word is the object of "leave" understood; the second, of "*seeing*."

Shipwrecked brother — one who has been trying to do good, and who has found all his efforts in vain; or one who is in despair from having wasted his time,—his hopes all destroyed; this man, seeing what others have done, will take heart and try again.

Brother, seeing — "Brother" is in apposition with "another"; "seeing" qualifies "another."

With a heart, etc. — 'No matter what our fate may be, let us work.'

To wait—for the result of our labor.

THE TEACHING AND CHARACTER OF CHRIST.

Chateaubriand—shah-to-bre-ăn. This celebrated Frenchman, — born 1769, died 1848,—had a most chequered life. He took an active part in the excited politics of his time, and was ever found on the side of popular liberty. He wrote a great many religious and other works the most celebrated being "The Genius of Christianity."

Wonders . . wretched—Christ's miracles were almost all performed in order to do good to the suffering.

Noblest sentiment—friendship. Christ himself says "Greater love hath no man than this, that a man lay down his life for his friends."

O Jerusalem—Where is this passage?

Tolerance—bearing with people.

Samaria — *See* 1 Kings xvi. 23, 24; also 2 Kings xvii.

NOTE.—Find out the passages in the New Testament referred to by the writer.

ON THE DEATH AND SACRIFICE OF CHRIST.

Atoning — making up for, — making amends for.

Prophecies—Refer to some concerning Christ.

Types — resemblances,—such as Moses, Joshua.

Symbols — signs, tokens,—such as the sacrifice of the passover, etc.

Spiritual kingdom — control over the minds and thoughts of men.

Morning stars, etc.-*See* Job xxxviii. 7.

ROCK OF AGES.

The Rev. Augustus Montague Toplady (died 1778) was an eminent minister of the Church of England, remarkable for his great earnestness in his work, and for his deep piety.

Rock . . cleft — The rock smitten by Moses was a type of Christ, for, as the water that gushed from the smitten rock, saved the Israelites in the desert; so the blood shed by the smitten Christ saves us.

Nothing, etc. — All trust for salvation must be in Christ alone, not in anything *we* can do.

Dress — 'the robe of Christ's righteousness.'

Fountain—*See* Zechariah xiii. 1.

CHRIST'S SECOND COMING.

Heber — *See* the sketch under "Palestine."

The Lord shall come — *See* Luke xxi. 27, Acts i. 2. Refer to other passages.

Appointed Judge—*See* 2 Timothy iv 1.

Rocks hide us—*See* Revelations vi. 16.

ALL CREATURES CALLED ON TO PRAISE GOD.

Heaven and earth, etc.—In this poem the writer says everything is to praise God,—not indeed with a voice; but all their perfection, their beauty, their grandness; the innumerable forms declare how great must be the One who made them.

Dazzling orb—What?

Element—*See* Chambers' Dictionary

Ye fair . . to move-"To move" means here to inspire with feelings of love.

THE CHRISTIAN SALVATION.

General application-including a great deal,—applied to most things.

Throw off its yoke—The yoke is a sign of subjection or submission to another, as cattle are yoked when serving man.

Filial relation—the relation of children to parents.

THE HOLY SPIRIT.

Keble is the author of a book of exquisite religious poems, entitled "The Christian Year"; the poems are for Sundays and the various holydays of the Church of England throughout the year. The poem in the Fourth Reader is the one for Whitsunday.

God of old, etc. — the descent upon Sinai.

Dove — *See* the account of Christ's baptism.

Gently light-because Christ has atoned for man and appeased the wrath of the Father.

Sinner's doom — The law from Sinai declared what must be done and what punishment would follow on the breaking of the commandments.

But these — the cloven tongues of fire. *See* Acts ii. 3. With this miraculous power of speech the apostles were to preach the 'glad tidings' to all the world.

Mighty wind-Notice the pronunciation of this last word; poets often call it "wind."

ALL'S FOR THE BEST.

Martin F. Tupper (born in 1810) is an English poet who has written a very great deal of not very popular poetry; "Proverbial Philosophy" is probably his best known work.

Trouble — We are told in this stanza that trouble and sorrow are friends to us; that it is foolish to be afraid.

Pundit — a learned man among the Hindoos.

Soldier of sadness —a somewhat singular expression; but Mr. Tupper means 'one who is governed by sadness,'—an unhappy man.

Who to the shores—The sorrow-stricken man,—whether the sorrow comes from disappointed love or from some other source,—is, even in despair, to remember "all's for the best."

A way-wearied — It is a little strange that in the very same sentence the poet should say the "soldier of sadness" becomes a "swallow" or a "dove" in the land of Despair!

Confiding—qualifies "man."

Frail bark of his creature — "Of his creature" is really in apposition to "bark"—*creature* and *bark* mean the same thing.

Bark — As if life were a sea, and man a vessel sailing across it.

THE BETTER LAND.

Mrs. Hemans — *See* the sketch under "A Song of Emigration."

I hear — In this poem the child asks his mother questions about the "better land."

Feathery—The leaves of the palm from their long, slender shape have a feathery appearance on the top of the lofty trees.

Date—grows in northern Africa, Egypt, Arabia, etc.

Where the rivers — Very few of such are known now; though the rivers in California and elsewhere may once have had this term applied to them with truth.

Ruby—What is the color?

Diamond—Diamonds come from Brazil, India, South Africa, the Ural mountains, etc.

Pearl- *See* "Pearl Fisheries in Ceylon."

Coral-*See* "The Coral Grove" and notes.

THE INCARNATION.

Milman — *See* the sketch under "Jerusalem before the Siege."

Not by thunders, etc. — as God came down on Sinai.

But Thee —the object of "laid."

Canopy—*See* Chambers' Dictionary.

Nor stooped, etc. — The subject of "stooped" is "fires." The meaning is —'nor did the stars attend you.'

A single star—*See* Matthew ii.

Sages — the "Wise men of the East." *See* the note on "*magic*" under "Parting with the Esquimaux."

Bright harmony—*See* Luke ii. 8. The poet says that 'the troop of angels did not attend Christ, but came to announce to the shepherds what had taken place.' Some ancient philosophers held the idea that the planets in their course made music; this they called the 'harmony of the spheres.'

Cherub, seraph—What is the plural of these words?

Hosanna—*See* Chambers' Dictionary.

Car of flame—Christ did not ascend to heaven as Elijah did, in a chariot of fire.

Nor o'er Thy cross — Read carefully the account of the crucifixion in the four Gospels.

Whilst thou — This clause is to be connected with "basked," etc., preceding. It is just possible that the poet intended that the first line of the stanza to be understood before "whilst," etc.; but the first way is preferable.

Consenting — Christ came *willingly*,—by his own consent, into the world to suffer and die.

Didst arise — *See* the story in the Gospels.

AN ELEGY.

Thomas Gray, an English poet (born in 1716, died in 1771) owes his fame chiefly to this "Elegy" and a few odes. He was a very learned man, with a very retiring, almost melancholy disposition, but with the genius of a true poet. He lived a great deal at and near Cambridge. *See* notes below on the "Epitaph."

Curfew — *See* the History of England—reign of William I.

Parting—dying. In olden times it was customary to toll a bell when persons were dying; this is still kept up when a criminal is led out to be executed.

Ploughman — Notice how the words in this and the preceding line imitate the motion of the man and the cattle.

Holds — "Stillness" is the subject of "holds."

Folds—Why are sheep put in folds?

Ivy-mantled — As a mantle covers the body; so the ivy covers the tower.

Moping owl — What are the habits of the owl?

Such as — "As" is here a relative, and "wandering" qualifies it.

Reign—kingdom. Why "ancient"?

Heaves—like the billows.

Mouldering—gradually wasting away.

Rude forefathers — That is, the unlearned, poor ones, in contrast with the rich ones who were buried in the church.

Incense-breathing—We all know how sweet and fresh morning air in the country is. What was *incense?*

Horn—the hunter's.

Lowly bed—not the grave, though this is glanced at, but the bed at home.

Evening care—most probably *spinning*.

Furrow—Did the *furrow* break the meadow?

Broke—Is this right?

A-field — "A" is an abbreviation of an old preposition "*on*." Compare abed, afloat, ashore, etc.

Ambition—people who think nothing is worthy of their attention except great deeds, etc.

Grandeur—those in high rank in life,—who think the story of the life of poor people is not worth hearing.

Boast of heraldry—the boast of being descended from a long line of great ancestors—belonging to great families.

Pomp of power — People possessed of power like to display it.

All that, etc. — rank, power, influence, honor, etc.

But to the grave — That is, no farther than the grave; these things may accompany a person to the grave but cannot go beyond it.

Impute . . fault—Gray says it was not the fault of these people if they were poor and unhonored; he does not know why they were so, but trusts all to God whose will it was.

Trophies—What would these be? Does *memory* raise them?

Fretted—*See* Chambers' Dictionary.

Swells — rolls forth; or it may mean 'adds its voice to the voice of the people.'

Storied urn — An *urn* in Greek and Roman times, was a vase for containing the ashes of a body that had been *burned;* on the urn the name of the person, his deeds, etc., were written.

Animated bust—lifelike. These busts, etc., were set up in churches, etc.

Fleeting—departed, gone.

Provoke—arouse, call forth.

Celestial fire — genius,—great mental power.

Hands — the subject of "are laid" understood. The lines mean that, perhaps from among these poor a great king or ruler might have arisen, or a great poet, if it had not been for the poverty that forced them to toil all day for mere bread.

Lyre—the emblem of poetry.

Knowledge . . unroll — This merely means that the people were ignorant.

Spoils of time—all the knowledge gathered together from the earliest ages.

Ample page-because of the vast amount of knowledge to be gained.

Unroll — We *turn over* the leaves of a book; before printing was invented, long strips of parchment were used in writing and *rolled up*.

Chill . . soul — The desire (rage) for knowledge is like a stream; and poverty, like frost, checks its flow; because the men had to work for daily food, and had no time or means for study.

Full many . . air—As these gems, etc., exist without man knowing or seeing them; so great men existed among these poor.

Village Hampden — the boy or man who defended the weak against the strong or rich, as Hampden defended Englishmen from the great tyrant Charles I.

Mute . . Milton —one who might have been as great as Milton; but he was *silent*, and so *received no glory*. *See* the sketch of Milton under "Adam's Morning Hymn."

Guiltless—Cromwell was not the author of the civil war; he was merely an officer in the army during that war, though afterwards he came to the head of affairs,—and *saved* bloodshed rather than *caused* it. *See* the History of England.

Listening senates—Mr. Gray is thinking of Pitt, no doubt.

Threats . . eyes—Walpole is probably referred to; his policy was to keep England at peace and allow commerce, manufactures, etc., to go on increasing, to the great good of the country. He had many enemies.

Forbade—The object of this verb is the four infinitive phrases in the preceding stanza.

Circumscribed—Supply "did their lot" before this word.

Growing virtues—the growth of their virtues.

Nor . . confined—'If their lot (poverty) prevented them from becoming great men,—(circumscribed their virtues),—it also prevented them from becoming great criminals.

Forbade . . flame—The object of "forbade" is the five following infinitive phrases.

Wade . . throne — such as Cæsar, in whose wars over a million people were killed; perhaps Gray has Cromwell in mind too.

Shut the gates, etc.—be pitiless, cruel in the pursuit of ambitious aims.

Struggling . . shame—Simple, honest people, such as these, will show by their looks if they are conscious of doing wrong; while the hardened in guilt,—the ambitious ones,—will do the worst deeds without a blush.

Heap . . flame — *Incense* means flattery; *muse's flame*, poetry: 'their lot forbade them to flatter, by means of poetry, the proud, luxurious men.' This flattery of the great was only too common in Gray's day.

Shrine — *See* the note under "The Baffled Traveller."

Muse — The muses were, in old fable, nine sisters, goddesses, who were the patrons of poets, poetry, and learning.

Far . . stray—'They being far . . strife, their sober . . stray' from where they were.

Madding—mad after pleasure, etc.

Ignoble strife — for pleasure, power, wealth, etc.

Along . . life—The life (or path of life) which these poor people led was a quiet, retired one—as a vale is quiet, and withdrawn from the glare and heat of the sun; the life of "the madding crowd" was not in a cool vale but in the hot sunlight,—exposed to every danger and temptation.

Noiseless tenor — no one heard tell of them,—they were not famous in any way.

These bones—'The bones of these people.'

To protect-in construction with *erected*.

Memorial—What would it be?

Uncouth—rude, not smooth.

Sculpture — often an angel's head, or even a skull and bones.

Unlettered Muse—an ignorant person.

Elegy—*See* Chambers' Dictionary.

Teach . . to die — how he should die; or that he must die.

Rustic moralist—the peasant who may be in the churchyard, filled with the thoughts that such a place would suggest.

For . . Resigned—The order is—"For who e'er resigned this . . being (as) a prey to dumb forgetfulness." The stan-

za asks the question if any one ever died wishing to be forgotten.

Warm . . day—life; the *grave* is night, *life* is day.

On some, etc.—The dying person wishes to lean on the breast of some one who loves him.

Pious—pitiful.

Even . . fires — So strong is our desire not to be forgotten that the poet says our ashes cry out from the tomb;—we want some head-stone at our grave to tell about us, so that we may be kept in mind by the living.

For thee—The order is—". . swain may say for thee," etc. *Thee* here means Gray himself; he supposes himself dead, and a stranger coming into the churchyard and reading the inscription on the tombstone, and then a conversation arising about the poet between the stranger and an old peasant who, when young, knew the poet.

Mindful, etc. — He (that is, Gray) is mindful of them because he is here writing their elegy,—in *these lines*.

Chance—by chance.

Led—qualifies "spirit."

Kindred spirit—one like Gray himself who inquires about the dead; and who asks about Gray.

Oft . . him — *Him, his he* in this and the rest of the poem mean Gray himself.

Hard by, etc.—The order is—"he, now smiling as in scorn, muttering his wayward fancies, would rove hard by yon wood."

Another—another morning.

The next—the next morning.

For thou canst read-It was not every-one who could read in Gray's day.

Lay — "Lay" is a song; it means here the verse or inscription on the tombstone.

Graved—engraved.

Rests . . earth—As a child, when tired, rests his head upon his mother's lap; so the man rests, as it were, upon the lap of earth—the great mother of us all.

A youth to fortune — Gray was not rich; he merely had enough to maintain himself comfortably. The expression may be explained in this way: 'As a youth has, to some extent, the powers of the full-grown man, though not altogether; so Gray had wealth (or fortune) to some extent, though not in completeness.'

To fame unknown — When Gray was writing this poem,—he had finished it in 1750,—his powers were known only to a few; so he really was "unknown to fame."

Fair Science-Gray was, next to Milton, the best educated of the last century poets at least; hence his meaning in this line — 'Science (or knowledge) frowned not on him,'—was favorable to him.

Melancholy — Gray was of a retiring disposition.

Heaven . . send—repaid all he gave to others.

The bosom — *Bosom* is in apposition with *abode*. The stanza says 'don't seek to know more about his merits, nor ask what were his failings,—these are known to God in whom his hopes tremblingly repose.'

HOPE BEYOND THE GRAVE.

James Beattie, LL.D., was a celebrated Scotch writer of last century; he wrote "The Minstrel," "Elements of Moral Science," "Esssay on Truth." and many others. He died in 1803.

Mouldering urn-*See* the note on "Storied urn" under Gray's "Elegy"; it is used here for *grave*.

False science-We might infer from what we see around us, that the dead would not rise again;—this might be called "false science": the Bible, the word of God, tells us that the dead shall rise;—and trust in this promise is *true science*, or wisdom.

That leads, etc. — So many questions and doubts are raised by a study of nature alone that we are bewildered.

Conjecture — The poet says while he studied nature alone he could know nothing certain about the dead, or a future life; it was all conjecture; but when he took God's word for it all doubt disappeared, and death now seemed beautiful, when before it was terrible.

THE VOICE OF SPRING.

Mrs. Hemans — *See* the sketch under "A Song of Emigration."
Fallen fanes, etc.—ruined temples.
It is not for me—That is, I ought not to speak, etc., because spring is the season of *life*.
Hesperian — belonging to the west; England, etc., are meant,—the climate being moist.
Starry time—night.
Iceland—*See* "Norwegians in Iceland," and notes; also "The American Eagle."
Chain—the ice. How is *ice* a *chain?*
Silvery main—*See* the note on "main" under "Sir H. Gilbert." Why *silvery?*
Sparry caves — caves containing spar. *See* Chambers' Dictionary.
Come forth — Spring now calls on the young and happy to greet her with song and merriment, for she cannot stay long.
Chamber and sullen hearth — Mrs. Hemans, no doubt, means that, now spring has come, the hearth is sullen—dark, cheerless—because there is no bright fire there as in winter; and the rooms of the house are no longer more pleasant than out-doors. For a note on "hearth" *see* "The Skater's Song."

TIMES AND SEASONS.

Samuel Rogers (born 1762, died 1855) made himself a name in English literature while engaged in the business of a banker. His chief poetical work is "Pleasures of Memory."

Caudle-cup—*See* Chambers' Dictionary.
Shall hail the day again — when the boy has become a man—on his twenty-first birth-day.
Child a youth — Supply "has become" after "child."
Eager . . ran — do as they had done before him.
Sirloin—*See* Chambers' Dictionary.
Basking—qualifies *nurse.*
'Mid, etc.—The order is—'shall cry 'mid many," etc.
Beguiled—qualifies *nurse.*
And soon again — on the wedding day of the young man.
And once — at the death of the man. The poem carries us from the birth of the child to the death of the man.
Holy earth—in the graveyard.

WHAT IS TIME?

Time is the warp of life—In weaving, the *warp* is the threads stretched out lengthwise; the threads that are filled in cross-wise, are called the *woof.* So *time* is the *warp* (or opportunity) and our *acts* are the *woof,*—what we interweave in time.
Time sowed the seed, etc. — 'Time caused (sowed) sickness and old-age; the result was death.'
Tide of life—What is meant? Explain. *See* under "Coal Fields in Nova Scotia" for a note on "tide."
Golden . . silver—Why these words?
Chronometers—Explain.
Meteor glare — because it passes away so rapidly.
Beautify, etc.—Explain.
Oracle—*See* Chambers' Dictionary.
Folly's blank, etc.—Fools do not know how to use time,—it is worthless to them, like a blank ticket drawn in a lottery; to wise men time is of the greatest value—like a great prize drawn in a lottery.
A particle, etc. — as compared with eternity.
Duration—in apposition with "endless years."
Dial—a sun-dial.
To-morrow, etc.—because "to-morrow" is future and we live only in the present—in to-day.
Chariot . . cloud—passing swiftly away.
Viewless—unseen.
Mighty Angel—*See* Revelations x. 5, 6.

AUBURN.

Goldsmith—For a sketch of Goldsmith, *see* under "Lines on the Death of Wolfe." The extract is from his best poem "The Deserted Village."
Swain—peasant.
Parting—dying.
Seats of my youth — "home of my youth."
When . . please—adjective to "youth."
Decent—neat.
Careless — with no care or sorrow resting on the mind.
Vacant—the same as "careless" above.

THUNDER-STORM IN THE ALPS.

Byron — *See* the sketch under "Ocean." The extract consists of stanzas 92 and 93 of canto iii. of "Childe Harold."
Jura . . aloud—Compare "deep calleth unto deep" in "The Falls of Niagara" by Brainerd—Fourth Reader.
Wert not made for slumber--because it is so lovely, so grand. Byron uses "wert" where we should expect "wast."
Fierce-from the terrible flashes of lightning, and the roar of the thunder.
A portion—mingling in it.
Phosphoric sea—gleaming beneath the lightning. The sea, in calm weather, often has the appearance of liquid fire or molten gold; this is caused, it is said, by countless numbers of minute marine insects swimming near the surface.

THE GRAVES OF A HOUSEHOLD.

Mrs. Hemans — *See* the sketch under "A Song of Emigration."
Folded flowers—the sleeping children. Many flowers fold up at night and open out in the morning.
Colours—or *colors;* the flag.
Spain — in the "Peninsular War" from 1809 to 1814. *See* the History of England.
Hearth — *See* the note under "The Skater's Song."
Alas for love, etc.—'Love would be but a poor thing if there was no other life than the one on earth.'

SEPARATION.

Montgomery — *See* the sketch under "The West Indian Islands."
Living, etc. — Those in health (the living) would not be happy, because they would not know how soon death might come and destroy them for ever; and the dying would not be happy because they were about to cease to exist.
Life's affections, etc. — The poet says that the feelings of love and friendship will exist with us in heaven,—they are not like a spark, bright for a moment and then lost for ever.
Faith beholds, etc. — That is, 'we believe the good, at death, to go to heaven.' In the next stanza the poet says our life is like stars which do not die out, but melt into the bright day.

STORY OF LE FEVRE.

Rev. Laurence Sterne, born at Clonmel in Ireland in 1713, is far more famous as a writer than as a preacher. For many years he was little known beyond his parish; but in 1759 he published his immortal work "Tristram Shandy." He wrote other books beside this. He died in 1768. The extract is from "Tristram Shandy."

Corporal—*See* the note on "corporal" under "Gallantry of a Marine."

This point—that Corporal Trim should sit down.

Sack—*See* Chambers' Dictionary.

Dendermond—in Belgium at the junction of the Scheldt and Denaer; it is spelled also "Termonde."

Death-watch — a small insect of the beetle kind that makes a noise like the ticking of a watch; people once believed that this foretold death.

An 't—if it. "An" is an old word meaning *if*.

Curate — *See* Chambers' Dictionary. Now-a-days we would not look for a curate in a kitchen; but in Sterne's time the common clergy held a much lower rank in society than they do now.

Beat up—aroused by the drum.

Angus's—Angus's regiment.

Ensign—*See* Chambers' Dictionary.

Right as a soldier, etc.—A soldier does nothing without *orders*; but on account of his pity for the sick officer Trim should have acted as a *man*, and promised the purse of his master.

The Accusing Spirit — Sterne makes man's actions watched over by a spirit, who bears to heaven an account of what evil man has done; in heaven another angel records this. In the case of uncle Toby he was such a good man that the first spirit blushed to have anything bad to say of him; and the second one wept at it, but the tear blotted out what had been written;—the fault was forgiven in so good a man.

Wheel at the cistern—*See* Ecclesiastes xii. 6. In Eastern countries, water is often drawn up from wells by large wheels; and if the wheel is broken, all is useless. Life is here called such a wheel.

Curtain—around the bed, enclosing it.

Ligament—*See* Ecclesiastes xii. 6. That bond which unites soul and body.

ADAM'S MORNING HYMN.

John Milton, the great English poet, was born in 1608. He was possessed of extraordinary mental abilities, and became the most learned of all our poets. He studied for the church, but gave it up on account of the doings of archbishop Laud. Before 1638 he had written "Comus," "L'Allegro," "Il Penseroso," "Lycidas" and others; in that year he started for a tour on the continent, but returned sooner than he intended on account of the civil war breaking out in England. In this struggle he did good service for the parliament with his pen, writing numerous pamphlets. Under Cromwell, whom he deeply reverenced, he became Latin Secretary, but lost his sight. After the restoration of Charles II. he lived in retirement; after the great fire, in which he lost most of his property, he was in comparative poverty. But in his blindness and poverty he composed his immortal work "Paradise Lost" (1667). Other works followed:—"Paradise Regained," "Samson Agonistes," etc. He died in 1674. The extract is from "Paradise Lost," Book v. verse 153, etc.

These are, etc. — Adam and Eve are worshipping God before their bower.

Thyself . . wondrous — 'If the works are wonderful, the one who made them must be still more so.'

Dimly seen — We see God in his works, —that is, his power, skill, goodness, etc.

Day without night — We would say 'day and night'; but there is no night in heaven, and so the expression means *always*.

Ye in heaven, etc. — 'Ye in heaven, ye on earth, and all ye creatures, join,' etc.

Him first . . end — That is, 'God is everything.'

Fairest of stars — the morning star, Venus.

Better—rather.

Sure pledge—Why?

Belong—We would rather say "belongest."

Thy greater—greater than thou.

Eternal—continual.

Meet'st the orient sun — The moon is sometimes in the east when the sun rises, and sometimes in the west.

With the fixed stars—disappears when the stars disappear.

Their orb that flies — Milton, like the ancients, represents the stars as fixed in a sphere, or orb, the eighth one outside our globe; this orb is turned (or flies) by another orb outside of that.

Five other—the five planets *(wanderers)* then known — Jupiter, Saturn, Venus, Mercury, Mars.

Not without song — It was an old idea that the spheres made music in their courses.

Ye that warble—the brooks.

MAN WAS MADE TO MOURN.

Robert Burns, Scotland's sweetest poet, was born near the town of Ayr in 1759. His education was limited, but sound. He never succeeded in making a comfortable living at farming or any other employment; but his songs charmed everybody. Unfortunately his disposition led him into dissipation, and he died at the early age of 37 years. His longest works are "Tam O'Shanter," and "The Cotter's Saturday Night." In his poems he shows a nature filled with the greatest tenderness and pathos; the deepest reverence for things sacred, but a perfect scorn for all hypocrisy and cant; and an ardent love for liberty.

Supported—The order is—'his right is supported.'

More pointed—'We ourselves make regret . . more pointed,'—acute, deep.

Some recompense—hereafter.

My son—It is an old man talking to the poet.

Percy McLaren got religion
March 12th 1887

in 1759.
nfortable
ly. Un-
ge of 37
Night."
he deep-
and an

g to the